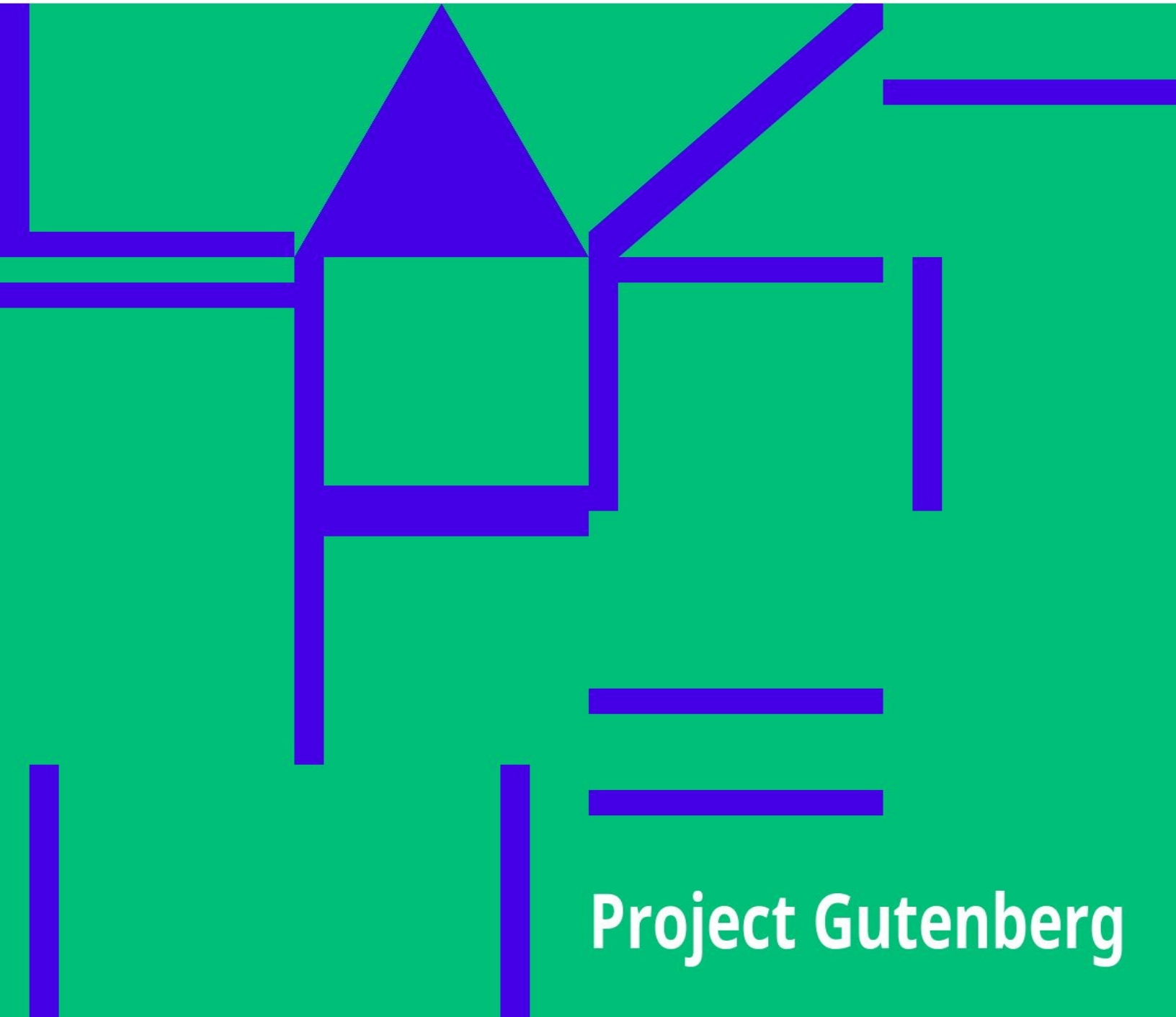


Lancelot of the Laik

A Scottish Metrical Romance (About 1490-1500 A. D.)

Walter W. Skeat



Project Gutenberg

The Project Gutenberg EBook of Lancelot of the Laik, by Walter William Skeat

This eBook is for the use of anyone anywhere at no cost and with almost no restrictions whatsoever. You may copy it, give it away or re-use it under the terms of the Project Gutenberg License included with this eBook or online at www.gutenberg.org

Title: Lancelot of the Laik
A Scottish Metrical Romance

Editor: Walter William Skeat

Release Date: July 25, 2011 [EBook #36848]

Language: English

*** START OF THIS PROJECT GUTENBERG EBOOK LANCELOT OF THE LAIK ***

Produced by Louise Hope, Robert Cicconetti and the Online Distributed Proofreading Team at <http://www.pgdp.net> (This file was produced from images generously made available by The Internet Archive/Canadian Libraries)

This text includes characters that require UTF-8 (Unicode) file encoding:

ƒ	long “s”
ȝ ȝ	yogh
m̄	m with over-line (the equivalent “n” form is shown as ñ with tilde for better font support)
æ	æ with accent, only in the Glossary

There are also a few letters with macron (“long” mark). If any of these characters do not display properly—in particular, if the diacritic does not appear directly above the letter—or if the apostrophes and quotation marks in this paragraph appear as garbage, you may have an incompatible browser or unavailable fonts. First, make sure that the browser’s “character set” or “file encoding” is set to Unicode (UTF-8). You may also need to change your browser’s default font.

Unlike most EETS productions, this book was printed with long “s” (ƒ). The editor’s Introduction says:

We find, in the MS., both the long and the twisted s (ƒ and s). These have been noted down as they occur, though I do not observe any law for their use. The letter “f” has been adopted as closely resembling a symbol in the MS., which

apparently has the force of double s, and is not unlike the “sz” used in modern German hand-writing.

Typographical errors are shown in the text with mouse-hover popups. For details, see the [end of the e-text](#).

[Preface](#)
[Lancelot du Lac](#)
[Lancelot of the Laik](#)
[Notes](#)
[Glossary](#)

Links: Throughout the book, links to numbered lines generally lead to the nearest multiple of 4 (printed number). In the two primary texts, marginal page numbers link to the Notes for that page. In the Preface, all line numbers are active links. To reduce visual chaos, conventional highlighting has been turned off; instead the links are shown in **boldface**. This may be overridden by your personal browser settings.

In the Glossary, ʒ (yogh) is alphabetized as z.

The Romans of Lancelot of the Laik.

DUBLIN:	WILLIAM MCGEE, 18, NASSAU STREET.
EDINBURGH:	T. G. STEVENSON, 22, SOUTH FREDERICK STREET.
GLASGOW:	OGLE & CO., 1, ROYAL EXCHANGE SQUARE.
BERLIN:	ASHER & CO., UNTER DEN LINDEN, 11.
BOSTON, U.S.:	DUTTON & CO.
NEW YORK:	C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA:	J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

Lancelot of the Laik:

A SCOTTISH METRICAL ROMANCE,

(ABOUT 1490-1500 A.D.)

RE-EDITED

FROM A MANUSCRIPT IN THE CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY LIBRARY,

WITH AN

INTRODUCTION, NOTES, AND GLOSSARIAL INDEX,

BY

THE REV. W. W. SKEAT, M.A.,

LATE FELLOW OF CHRIST'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE;
AND TRANSLATOR OF THE SONGS AND BALLADS OF UHLAND.

[Second and Revised Edition, 1870.]

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 60, PATERNOSTER ROW.



MDCCCLXV.



JOHN CHILDS AND SON, PRINTERS.

PREFACE.

I.—DESCRIPTION OF THE MS., ETC.

A FORMER edition of the present poem was printed for the Maitland Club, in 1839, and edited by Joseph Stevenson, Esq. It has saved me all trouble of transcription, but by no means, I am sorry to say, that of correction. Those who possess the older edition will readily perceive that it differs from the present one very frequently indeed, and that the variations are often such as considerably to affect the sense. Many of the errors in it (such as *casualtyee* for *casualytee*, *grone*, for *gone*, *reprent* for *repent*) are clearly typographical, but there are others which would incline me to believe that the transcription was too hastily executed; several passages being quite meaningless. Near the conclusion of Mr Stevenson's preface we read: "The pieces which have been selected for the present volume ¹ are printed with such errors of transcription as have crept into them by the carelessness of the scribe;" a statement which certainly implies that there was no intention on his part of departing from the original. Yet that he sometimes unconsciously did so to such an extent as considerably to alter (or destroy) the sense, the reader may readily judge from a few examples:—

LINE.	EDITION OF 1839.	TRUE READING OF THE MS.
26.	fatil (<i>fatal</i>),	fatit (<i>fated</i>).
285.	unarmyt (<i>unarmed</i>),	enarmyt (<i>fully armed</i>).
682.	can here,	cam nere.
700.	rendit (<i>rent</i>),	vondit (<i>wounded</i>).
764.	refuse (<i>refusal?</i>),	reprefe (<i>defeat</i>).
861.	felith (<i>feeleth</i>),	letith (<i>setteth</i>).

1054.	vyt,	rycht.
1084.	speiris,	spuris.
1455.	cumyng (<i>coming</i>),	cunyng (<i>skill</i>).
1621.	he war,	be war (<i>beware</i>).
1641.	promyß,	punyß (<i>punish</i>).
2010.	ane desyne,	medysyne.
2092.	born,	lorn (<i>lost</i>).
2114.	havin,	harm.
2142.	Hymene (!),	hyme (<i>him</i>).
2219.	such,	furth (<i>forth</i>).
2245.	al so y-vroght,	al foly vroght.
2279.	chichingis (!),	thithingis (<i>tidings</i>).
2446.	love,	lore (<i>teaching</i>). Etc.

Several omissions also occur, as, *e.g.*, of the word “off” in **l. 7**, of the word “tressore” in **l. 1715**, and of four whole lines at a time in two instances; viz., lines **1191-4**, and **2877-80**. It will be found, in fact, that the former text can seldom be safely quoted for the purposes of philology; and I cannot but think Mr Stevenson’s claim of being accurate to be especially unfortunate; and the more so, because the genuine text is much simpler and more intelligible than the one which he has given.

The original MS. is to be found in the Cambridge University Library, marked Kk. 1. 5. It formerly formed part of a thick volume, labelled “Tracts;” but these are now being separated, for greater convenience, into several volumes. The MS. of “Lancelot” has little to do with any of the rest as regards its subject, but several other pieces are in the same hand-writing; and, at the end of one of them, an abstract of Solomon’s proverbs, occur the words, “Expliciunt Dicta Salamonis, per manum V. de F.”² This hand-writing, though close, is very regular, and my own impression certainly is that the scribe has almost always succeeded in preserving the sense of the poem, though there is much confusion in the dialectal forms, as will be shewn presently.

The present text is as close a fac-simile of the MS. as can be represented by

printed letters, every peculiarity being preserved as far as practicable, even including the use of *y* for *þ* (or *th*); so that the reader must remember that *yow* in **l. 94** stands for *thow*, and *vis* in **l. 160** for *this*, and so on; but this ought not to cause much difficulty. The sole points of difference are the following:

1. In the MS. the headings “Prologue,” “Book I.” etc., do not occur.
2. The lines do not always begin (in the MS.) with a capital letter.
3. The letters *italicized* are (in the MS.) represented by signs of contraction. One source of difficulty is the flourish over a word, used *sometimes* as a contraction for *m* or *n*. I have expanded this flourish as an *m* or *n* wherever such letter is manifestly required; but it also occurs where it is best to attach to it no value. In such instances, the flourish occurs most frequently over the last word in a line, and (except very rarely) only over words which have an *m* or *n* in them. It would thus seem that their presence is due to the fact of the scribe wanting employment for his pen after the line had been written, and that the flourish therefore appears over certain words, not so much because the *n* is *wanting* in them, as because it is *there already*. Such words have a special attraction for the wandering pen. Still, in order that the reader may know wherever such flourishes occur, they have all been noted down; thus, in **l. 46**, the stroke over the *n* in “greñ” means that a long flourish occurs drawn over the whole word, and the reader who wishes to expand this word into “grene” or “grenn” may easily do it for himself, though he should observe that the most usual form of the word is simply “gren,” as in lines **1000, 1305**.

In a few nouns ending in *-l*, the plural is indicated by a stroke drawn through the doubled letter; as in *perillis*, *sadillis*, etc.; and even the word *ellis* (else) is thus abbreviated.

4. I am responsible for all hyphens, and letters and words between square brackets; thus, “with-outen” is in the MS. “with outen;” and “knych[t]ly” is written “knychly.” Whenever a line begins with a capital letter included between two brackets, the original has a blank space left, evidently intended for an illuminated letter. Wherever illuminated letters actually occur in the MS., they are denoted in this edition by large capitals.

5. We find, in the MS., both the long and the twisted *s* (*f* and *s*). These have been noted down as they occur, though I do not observe any law for their use. The letter “ß” has been adopted as closely resembling a symbol in the MS., which apparently has the force of double *s*, and is not unlike the “sz” used in modern

German hand-writing. It may be conveniently denoted by ss when the type “ß” is not to be had, and is sometimes so represented in the “Notes.”

6. The MS. is, of course, not punctuated. The punctuation in the present edition is mostly new; and many passages, which in the former edition were meaningless, have thus been rendered easily intelligible. I am also responsible for the headings of the pages, the abstract at the sides of them, the numbering of the folios in the margin, the notes, and the glossary; which I hope may be found useful. The greatest care has been taken to make the text accurate, the proof-sheets having been compared with the MS. *three times* throughout. ³

II.—DESCRIPTION OF THE POEM.

The poem itself is a loose paraphrase of not quite fourteen folios of the first of the three volumes of the French Romance of Lancelot du Lac, if we refer to it as reprinted at Paris in 1513, in three volumes, thin folio, double-columned. ⁴ The English poet has set aside the French Prologue, and written a new one of his own, and has afterwards translated and amplified that portion of the Romance which narrates the invasion of Arthur’s territory by “le roy de oultre les marches, nomme galehault” (in the English *Galiot*), and the defeat of the said king by Arthur and his allies.

The Prologue (lines 1-334) tells how the author undertook to write a romance to please his lady-love; and how, after deciding to take as his subject the story of Lancelot as told in the French Romance, yet finding himself unequal to a close translation of the whole of it, he determined to give a paraphrase of a portion of it only. After giving us a brief summary of the earlier part by the simple process of telling us what he will *not* relate, he proposes to begin the story at the point where Lancelot has been made prisoner by the lady of Melyhalt, and to take as his subject the wars between Arthur and Galiot, and the distinction which Lancelot won in them; and afterwards to tell how Lancelot made peace between these two kings, and was consequently rewarded by Venus, who

“makith hyme his ladice grace to have” (l. 311).

The latter part of the poem, it may be observed, has not come down to us. The author then concludes his Prologue by beseeching to have the support of a very celebrated poet, whose name he will not mention, but will only say that

“Ye fresch enditing of his laiting tounge
Out throuch yis world so wid is younge,” etc. ⁵ (l. 328.)

The first Book introduces us to King Arthur at Carlisle. ⁶ The king is visited by dreams, which he imagines to forebode misfortune; he therefore convokes all his clerks, and inquires of them the meaning of the dreams, proposing to hang them in the event of their refusal. Thus strongly urged, they tell him that those on whom he most relies will fail him at his need; and when he further inquires if this evil fate can be averted, they answer him very obscurely that it can only be remedied by help of the water-lion, the leech, and the flower; a reply which the king evidently regards as unsatisfactory. Soon after an aged knight, fully armed, enters the palace, with a message from King Galiot, requiring him to give “tribute and rent.” Arthur at once refuses, somewhat to the astonishment of the knight, who is amazed at his hardihood. Next arrives a message from the lady of Melyhalt, informing Arthur of the actual presence of Galiot’s army. We are then momentarily introduced to Lancelot, who is pining miserably in the lady’s custody. Next follows a description of Galiot’s army, at sight of the approach of which King Arthur and his “niece,” Sir Gawain, confer as to the best means of resistance. In the ensuing battle Sir Gawain greatly distinguishes himself, but is at last severely wounded. Sir Lancelot, coming to hear of Sir Gawain’s deeds, craves leave of the lady to be allowed to take part in the next conflict, who grants him his boon on condition that he promise to return to his prison. She then provides for him a red courser, and a complete suit of red armour, in which guise he appears at the second battle, and is the “head and comfort of the field;” the queen and Sir Gawain beholding his exploits from a tower. The result of the battle convinces Galiot that Arthur is not strong enough at present to resist him sufficiently, and that he thus runs the risk of a too easy, and therefore dishonourable, conquest; for which excellent reason he grants Arthur a twelvemonth’s truce, with a promise to return again in increased force at the expiration of that period. Sir Lancelot returns to Melyhalt according to promise, and the lady is well pleased at hearing the reports of his famous deeds, and visits him when asleep, out of curiosity to observe his appearance after the fight.

In the Second Book the story makes but little progress, nearly the whole of it being occupied by a long lecture or sermon delivered to Arthur by a “master,” named Amytans, on the duties of a king; the chief one being that a king should give presents to everybody—a duty which is insisted on with laborious tediousness. Lines **1320-2130** are almost entirely occupied with this subject, and will be found to be the driest part of the whole narrative. In the course of his

lecture, Amytans explains at great length the obscure prophecy mentioned above, shewing that by the water-lion is meant God the Father, by the leech God the Son, and by the flower the Virgin Mary. Though the outline of a similar lecture exists in the old French text, there would seem to be a special reason for the length to which it is here expanded. Some lines certainly seem to hint at events passing in Scotland at the time when the poem was composed. Thus, “kings may be excused when of tender age” (l. 1658); but when they come to years of discretion should punish those that have wrested the law. Again we find (l. 1920) strong warnings against flatterers, concluding (l. 1940) with the expression,

“Wo to the realme that havith sich o chans!”

Such hints may remind us of the long minorities of James II. and James III.; and, whilst speaking on this subject, I may note a somewhat remarkable coincidence. When King Arthur, as related in Book I., asks the meaning of his dream, he is told that it signifies that “they in whom he most trusts will fail him” (l. 499); and he afterwards laments (l. 1151) how his “men fail him at need.” Now when we read that a story is current of a prophetess having told James III. that he was destined to “fall by the hands of his own kindred,”⁷ and that that monarch was in the habit of consulting *astrologers*⁸ (compare l. 432) as to the dangers that threatened him, it seems quite possible that the poem was really composed about the year 1478; and this supposition is consistent with the fact that the handwriting of the present MS. copy belongs to the very end of the fifteenth century.

Towards the end of the Second Book, we learn that the twelvemonth’s truce draws near its end, and that Sir Lancelot again obtains permission from the lady to be present in the approaching combat, choosing this time to be arrayed in “armys al of blak” (l. 2426).

In the Third Book Galiot returns to the fight with a host thrice as large as his former one. As before, Gawain distinguishes himself in the first encounter, but is at length so “evil wounded” that he was “the worse thereof evermore” (l. 2706). In the second combat, the black knight utterly eclipses the red knight, and the last thousand (extant) lines of the poem are almost wholly occupied with a description of his wonderful prowess. At the point where the extant portion of the poem ceases, the author would appear to be just warming with his subject, and to be preparing for greater efforts.

In continuance of the outline of the story, I may add that the French text⁹

informs us how, after being several times remounted by Galiot, and finding himself with every fresh horse quite as fresh as he was at the beginning of the battle, the black knight attempted, as evening fell, to make his way back to Melyhalt secretly. Galiot, however, having determined not to lose sight of him, follows and confronts him, and earnestly requests his company to supper, and that he will lodge in his tent that night. After a little hesitation, Lancelot accepts the invitation, and Galiot entertains him with the utmost respect and flattery, providing for him a most excellent supper and a bed larger than any of the rest. Lancelot, though naturally somewhat wearied, passes a rather restless night, and talks a good deal in his sleep. Next day Galiot prays him to stay longer, and he consents on condition that a boon may be granted him, which is immediately acceded to without further question. He then requests Galiot to submit himself to Arthur, and to confess himself vanquished, a demand which so amazes that chieftain that he at first refuses, yet succeeds in persuading Lancelot to remain with him a little longer. The day after, preparations are made for another battle, on which occasion Lancelot wears Galiot's armour, and is at first mistaken for him, till Sir Gawain's acute vision detects that the armour really encases the black knight. As Lancelot now fights on Galiot's side, it may easily be imagined how utter and complete is the defeat of Arthur's army, which was before victorious owing to his aid only; and we are told that Arthur is ready to kill himself out of pure grief and chagrin, whilst Sir Gawain swoons so repeatedly, for the same reason, as to cause the most serious fears to be entertained for his life. At this sorrowful juncture Lancelot again claims his boon of Galiot, who, in the very moment of victory, determines at last to grant it, and most humbly sues for mercy at the hands of Arthur, to that king's most intense astonishment. By this very unexpected turn of affairs, the scene of dolour is changed to one of unalloyed joy, and peace is immediately agreed upon, to the satisfaction of all but some true-bred warriors, who preferred a battle to a peace under all circumstances. Not long after, Galiot discovers Lancelot with eyes red and swollen with much weeping, and endeavours to ascertain the reason of his grief, but with small success. After endeavouring to comfort Lancelot as much as possible, Galiot goes to visit King Arthur, and a rather long conference takes place between them as they stand at Sir Gawain's bedside, the queen being also present. In the course of it, Galiot asks Arthur what price he would pay to have the black knight's perpetual friendship; to which Arthur replies, he would gladly share with him half of everything that he possessed, saving only Queen Guinevere. The question is then put to Gawain, who replies that, if only his

health might be restored, he would wish to be the most beautiful woman in the world, so as to be always beloved by the knight. Next it is put to Guinevere, who remarks that Sir Gawain has anticipated all that a lady could possibly wish, an answer which is received with much laughter. Lastly, Arthur puts the question to Galiot himself, who declares that he would willingly, for the black knight's sake, suffer that all his honour should be turned into shame, whereat Sir Gawain allows himself to be outbidden. The queen then obtains a brief private conference with Galiot, and prays him to obtain for her an interview with the black knight, who promises to do what he can to that end. He accordingly sounds the black knight upon the subject, and, finding him entirely of the same mind, does all he can to promote their acquaintance, and is at last only too successful; and at this point we may suppose the Scottish Romance to have stopped, if indeed it was ever completed. For some account of the Romance of Lancelot, I may refer the reader to Professor Morley's English Writers, vol. i., pp. 568-570, and 573; to "Les Romans de la Table Ronde," par M. Paulin Paris; and to the Prefaces to the "Seynt Graal," edited by Mr Furnivall for the Roxburghe Club, 1861, and "La Queste del Saint Graal," also edited by the same for the same club in 1864. In the last-named volume short specimens are given from thirteen MSS. at Paris, ten of which contain the Romance of Lancelot. There are also manuscript copies of it in the British Museum, viz., MSS. Harl. 6341 and 6342, Lansdowne 757, and MS. Addit. 10293.

III.—THE DIALECT OF THE POEM.

In coming to discuss the dialect, we find everywhere traces of considerable confusion; but it is not at all easy to assign a satisfactory reason for this.¹⁰ Certain errors of transcription soon shew that the scribe had before his eyes an older copy, which he mis-read. Thus, in **l. 433**, we find "set," where the older copy must have had "fet," and which he must have mis-read as "fet;" and again, in lines **2865**, **2883**, he has, by a similar confusion between "f" and "f," written "firft" instead of "fift." It is most probable that the older copy was written in the Lowland Scottish dialect (the whole tone of the poem going to prove this), as shewn by the use of *ch* for *gh*, as in *bricht* for *bright*, (unless this be wholly due to the scribe); by the occurrence of plurals in *-is*, of verbal preterites and passive participles in *-it*, and of words peculiarly Scottish, such as *syne* (afterwards), *anerly* (only), *laif* (remainder), *oft-syss* (oft-times), etc. Moreover, the Northern *r*

is clearly indicated by the occurrence of such dissyllables as *gar-t*, 2777, *lar-g*, 2845, *fir-st*, 2958, 3075; with which compare the significant spellings *harrmful*, 1945, and *furrde*, 2583. But, on the other hand, it would appear as if either the author or the copyist had no great regard for pure dialect, and continually introduces Southern and Midland forms, mixing them together in an indiscriminate and very unusual manner. We find, for example, in line 1765,

“Beith larg and iffis frely of thi thing,”

the Scottish form *iffis* (give) and the Southern *beith* in close conjunction; and we find no less than six or seven forms of the plural of the past tense of the verb “to be;” as, for example, *war* (3136), *veir* (818), *ware* (825), *waren* (3301), *veryng* (2971), *waryng* (443), etc. If we could suppose that the scribe was not himself a Scotchman, we might in some measure account for such a result; but the supposition is altogether untenable, as the peculiar character of the handwriting (resembling that found, not in English, but in *French MSS.*) decides it to be certainly Scottish; as is also evident from the occurrence, in the same handwriting, of a Scotticised version of Chaucer’s “Flee from the press.”

The best that can be done is to collect a few instances of peculiarities.

1. The broad Northumbrian forms *a*, *ane*, *baith*, *fra*, *ga*, *haill*, *hame*, *knaw*, *law*, *sa*, *wat*, although occasionally retained, are also at times changed into *o*, *one*, *boith*, *fro*, *go*, *holl*, *hom*, *know*, *low*, *so*, and *wot*. Thus, at the end of l. 3246, we find *haill*, which could not have been altered without destroying the rime; but in l. 3078, we find it changed, in the middle of the line, into *holl*. In l. 3406, we find *sa*, but only three lines further on we find *so* twice.

So, too, we not only find *tane* (taken), *gais* (goes), but also the forms *tone* and *goß*. See lines 1071, 1073.

2. The true plural form of the verb is shewn by lines 203, 204,

“Of quhois fame and worschipful dedis
Clerkis into diuerß bukis *redis*,”

where alteration would have ruined the rime utterly; and the same termination (*-is*) is correctly used in the imperative mood, as,

——“fo *giffis* ws delay” (l. 463);

“And of thi wordis *beis* trew and stable” (l. 1671);

but the termination *-ith* is continually finding its way into the poem, even as early as in the fourth line,

“*Uprisith* arly in his fyre chare;”

and in the imperative mood also, as,

“*Remembrith* now it stondith one the poynt” (l. 797).

The most singular point of all, however, is this—that, not content with changing *-is* into *-ith* in the 3rd person singular, the scribe has done the same even in the 2nd person, thus producing words which belong to no pure example of any distinct dialect. Observe the following lines:—

“O woful wrech, that *levis* in to were!
To schew the thus the god of loue me sent,
That of thi seruice no thing is content,
For in his court yhoue [= thou] *lewith* in disspar,
And vilfully *sustenis* al thi care,
And *schapith* no thinge of thine awn remede,
Bot *clepith* ay and *cryith* apone dede,” etc. (ll. 84-90).

Here *levis* is altered into *lewith*, not only unnecessarily, but quite wrongly. For similar mistakes, see ll. 1019, 1369, 1384, 2203. For examples of correct usage, see ll. 1024, 1337, 1796, 2200, 2201.

3. But the terminations which are used in the most confused manner of all are *-en*, *-yne*, and *-ing* or *-yng*. Thus we find the non-Scottish infinitives, *telen* (494), *makine* (191); the constant substitution of *-ing* for *-and* in the present participle; ¹¹ a confusion between the past participial ending *-ine* (more correctly *-yn*), and the present ending *-and*, thus producing such forms as *thinkine* (34), and *besichyne* (418); and also a confusion between *-ing* and the past participial ending *-en*, as *fundyng* for *funden* (465), *fallyng* for *fallen* (1217, 1322, 3267), *swellyng* for *swollen* (1222), and *halding* for *halden* (2259). We even find *-ing* in the infinitive mood, as in *awysing* (424), *viting* (to know, 410), *smyting* (1326), *warnnyng* (1035), *passing* (2148), *schewing* (2736), etc.; and, lastly, it occurs in the plural of the indicative present, instead of the Midland *-en*; as in *passing* (1166), *biding* (2670), and *levyng* (3304). ¹²

It may safely be concluded, however, that the frequent occurrence of non-Scottish infinitives must not be attributed to the copyist, since they are probably due rather to the author; for in such a line as

“Of his desir to viting the sentens” (l. 410),

the termination *-ing* is required to complete the rhythm of the line.

In the same way we must account for the presence of the prefix *i-*, as in the line

“Quharwith that al the gardinge was I-clede” (l. 50).

This prefix never occurs in vernacular Scottish; but we may readily suppose that this and other numerous Southern forms of words are due (as in Gawain Douglas and Lyndesay) to the author's familiarity with Chaucer's poems, as evinced by the similarity of the rhythm to Chaucer's, and by the close resemblance of several passages. Compare, for instance, the first seventy lines of the Prologue with the opening passages of "The Flower and the Leaf," and "The Complaint of the Black Knight;" and see notes to **II. 432, 1608**. Indeed, this seems to be the only satisfactory way of accounting for the various peculiarities with which the poem abounds.

Mr J. A. H. Murray, in his remarks printed in the preface to Mr Lumby's edition of "Early Scottish Verse," comes to a similar conclusion, and I here quote his words for the reader's convenience and information. "There is no reason, however, to suspect the scribe of *wilfully* altering his original; indeed, the reverse appears manifest, from the fact that the 'Craft of Deyng' has not been assimilated in orthography to 'Ratis Raving,' but distinctly retains its more archaic character; while in 'Sir Lancelot,' edited by Mr Skeat for the Early English Text Society, from the handwriting of the same scribe, we have a language in its continual Anglicisms quite distinct from that of the pieces contained in this volume, of which the Scotch is as pure and unmixed as that of the contemporary Acts of Parliament. With regard to the remarkable transformation which the dialect has undergone in Sir Lancelot, there seems reason, therefore, to suppose that it was not due to the copyist of the present MS., but to a previous writer, if not to the author himself, who perhaps affected *southernism*, as was done a century later by Lyndesay and Knox, and other adherents of the English party in the Reformation movement. The Southern forms are certainly often shown by the rhyme to be original, and such a form as *tone* for *tane* = taken, is more likely to have been that of a Northerner trying to write Southern, than of a Southern scribe, who knew that no such word existed in his dialect. The same may be said of the *th* in the second person singular. A Scotch writer, who observed that Chaucer said *he liveth*, where he himself said *he lyves*, might be excused for supposing that he would also have said *thou liveth* for the Northern *thow lyves*; but we can hardly fancy a Southern copyist making the blunder."

4. We find not only the Northumbrian forms *sall* and *suld*, but also *shall*, *shalt*, and *shuld*.

5. As regards pronouns, we find the Scottish *scho* (she) in **I. 1169**; but the usual

form is *sche*. We find, too, not only the broad forms *thai*, *thair*, *thaim*, but also *thei* (sometimes *the*), *ther*, and *them*. As examples of forms of the relative pronoun, we may quote *who*, *quho*, *whois*, *quhois* (whose), *quhom*, *qwhome* (whom), *quhat*, *qwhat* (what), and *whilk*, *quhilk*, *quhich*, *quich*, *wich* (which). *Wich* is used instead of *who* (**l. 387**), and we also find *the wich*, or *the wich that*, similarly employed. The nominative *who* does not perhaps occur as a *simple* relative, but has the force of *whoso*, or *he who*, as *e.g.*, in **l. 1102**; or else it is used interrogatively, as in **l. 1172**.

6. Many other peculiarities occur, which it were tedious to discuss fully. It may suffice, perhaps, to note briefly these following. We find both the soft sound *ch*, as in *wich*, *sich*, and the hard sound *k*, as in *whilk*, *reke* (reach), *streke* (stretch), etc.; which are the true Northern forms.

Mo is used as well as *more*.

Tho occurs for *then* in **l. 3184**; and for *the* in **l. 247**.

At occurs as well as *that*; *atte* as well as *at the*, **627, 1055**.

The short forms *ma* (make), *ta* (take), *sent* (sendeth), *stant* (standeth), are sometimes found; the two former being Northumbrian.

Has is used twice as a *plural* verb (**ll. 481, 496**).¹³

3ha (yes) occurs in **l. 2843**; but we also meet with *3his*, or *yis*; with reference to which Mr Morris writes:— “The latter term was not much in favour with the people of the North. Even now *yes* sounds offensive to a Lancashire man. ‘Hoo cou’d naw opp’n hur meawth t’ sey *eigh* (yea) or *now* (no); boh simpurt on sed *iss*; th’ dickons *iss* hur on him too. —*Tim Bobbin*.’” In fact, the distinction between *3ha* and *3his*, which I have pointed out in *William of Palerne* (Glossary, s.v. *3is*), viz., that *3ha* merely assents, whilst *3his* shews that the speaker has an opinion of his own, is in this poem observed. Thus, in **l. 2843**, *3ha* = “yes, I admit that I do;” but in **l. 514**, *yis* = “yes, but you had better do so;” in **l. 1397**, *3his* = “yes, indeed I will;” and in **l. 3406**, *3is* = “yes, but I cannot accept your answer.”¹⁴ The true distinction between *thou* and *ye* (*William of Palerne*, Pref. p. xli) is also generally observed. Thus the Green Bird, in the Prologue, considers the poet to be a fool, and calls him *thou*; but the clerks, in addressing Arthur (**l. 498**) politely say *ye*. And again, Amytans, when rebuking Arthur, frequently calls him *thou*, without any ceremony. Cf. **ll. 659, 908, 921, 2839, &c.**

As regards the vocabulary, we find that some Northumbrian terms have been

employed, but others thrown aside. Thus, while we find the Northumbrian words *thir* (these), *traist* (trust), *newis* (neives, fists), *radour* (fear), etc., we do not, on the other hand, meet with the usual Scottish word *mirk*, but observe it to be supplanted by *dirk* (**l. 2471**). So, again, *eke* is used in the sense of *also*, instead of being a verb, as more usual in Northern works. We may note, too, the occurrence of *frome* as well as *fra*, and the Scottish form *thyne-furth* (thenceforth) in **l. 2196**.

The spelling is very various. We find even four forms of one word, as *cusynace*, *cusynece*, *cusynes*, *cwsynes*; and, as examples of eccentric spelling, may be quoted *qsquyaris* (squires, **l. 3204**), whilst in **l. 3221** we find *sqwar*.

Both in the marginal abstract and in the notes I have chiefly aimed at removing minor difficulties by explaining sentences of which the construction is peculiar, and words which are disguised by the spelling. For the explanation of more uncommon words, recourse should be had to the Glossarial Index.

¹ The volume contains other poems besides “Sir Lancelot.”

² See Mr Lumby’s editions of “Early Scottish Verse” and “Ratis Raving,” both edited for the E.E.T.S. from this MS. Only the latter of these is in the hand-writing of V. de F.

³ This refers to the edition printed in 1865. In executing the present reprint, the proof-sheets have been once more compared with the MS., and a very few insignificant errors have been thus detected and rectified.

⁴ “As to the Romance of Sir Lancelot, our author [Gower], among others on the subject, refers to a volume of which he was the hero; perhaps that of Robert de Borron, altered soon afterwards by Godefroy de Leigny, under the title of *Le Roman de la Charrette*, and printed, with additions, at Paris by Antony Verard, in the year 1494.

For if thou wilt the bokes rede
Of Launcelot and other mo,
Then might thou seen how it was tho
Of armes,” etc.

(GOWER: *Confessio Amantis*, Book iv.)

Quoted from Warton’s English Poetry, vol. ii., p. 234, ed. 1840. I quote this as bearing somewhat on the subject, though it should be observed that *Le Roman de la Charrette* is not the same with *Lancelot du Lac*, but only a romance of the same class. Chaucer also refers to Lancelot in his Nonnes Prestes Tale, l. 392; and it is mentioned in the famous lines of Dante (*Inf.* v. 127)—

“Noi leggevamo un giorno per diletto
Di Lancilotto, come amor lo strinse,” &c.

⁵ He does not necessarily imply that the poet invoked was still alive; and we might almost suppose Petrarch to be meant, who was more proud of his Latin poem called “Africa” than of his odes and sonnets. See Hallam’s Literary History (4 vols.), vol. i., p. 85. But this is pure conjecture.

⁶ But the French has “Cardueil.” See [l. 2153](#).

⁷ Tytler’s History of Scotland (Edinburgh, 1841), vol. iv., p. 216.

⁸ The French text does not say anything about “astronomy.” We may especially note the following lines, as *not* being in the French, viz., lines [1473-1496](#), [1523-1542](#), [1599-1644](#), [1658-1680](#), and the long passage [1752-1998](#).

⁹ See Appendix.

¹⁰ For many valuable remarks upon the dialect of the poem I am indebted to Mr R. Morris.

¹¹ We find the true forms occasionally, as *obeisand* ([641](#)), *plesand* ([1731](#)), *thinkand* ([2173](#)), *prekand* ([3089](#)), and *fechtand* ([3127](#)). Compare the form *seruand* ([122](#)).

¹² “The Scottish pronunciation of *-ing* was already, as it still is, *-een*; and the writer, knowing that the correct spelling of *dwelling*, for example, was *dwelling*, fancied also that *fallen*, *halden* (Sc. *fallyn*, *haldyn*) were *fallyng*, *haldyng*. Lyndesay and Gawain Douglas often do the same.

Compare *gardinge* ([l. 50](#)), *laiting* ([l. 327](#)).” —J. A. H. Murray.

¹³ “The plural in Scottish always ends in -s after a noun or when the verb is separated from its pronoun; we still say *the men hes*, *the bairns sings*, *them ’at cums*, not *have*, *sing*, *come*. Notice the frequent use of *th* for *t*, as in [l. 497](#), *Presumyth* = *presumit*, presumed, it being presumed.” —J. A. H. Murray. [Or, *presumyth* may be the pl. imperative, as in *Remembrith* ([l. 797](#)), already noticed. —Ed.]

¹⁴ “This *3is* is the common form in the Scottish writers, though *ay* is largely the modern vernacular.” —J. A. H. Murray.

APPENDIX.

EXTRACTS FROM THE FRENCH ROMANCE OF “LANCELOT DU LAC.”

As it seems impossible to do justice to the story of Lancelot without giving due attention to the famous French Romance, and since a portion of the French text is really necessary to complete even that fragment of it which the Scottish author proposed to write, the following extracts have been made with the view of shewing (1) the general outline of the earlier part of the story, (2) the method in which the Scottish author has expanded or altered his original, and (3) the completion of the story of the wars between Arthur and Galiot. ¹

I. Headings of the chapters of the French Romance, from its commencement to the end of the wars with Galiot.

[The commas are inserted by the present editor, and the expansions marked by italics.]

¶ Cy commence la table du premier volume de la table
ronde lancelet du lac.

Claudas, king of Scotland,
deprives king Ban and
king Boort of their lands.

¶ Comment apres la mort de vterpandragon roy du
royaulme de logres, & apres la mort aramon, roy de la petite
bretaigne, le roy claudas de la terre Descosse mena guerre
contre le roy ban de benoic et le roy boort de gauues tant

quil les desherita² de leurs terres. Fueille. i.

Claudas besieges Ban in
the Castle of Tribble.

¶ Comment le roy claudas assiegea le chateau de tribble
auquel estoit le roy ban de benoic, et comment ilz
parlementerent ensemble. f. i.

King Ban, his wife, and
his son Lancelot repair to
the court of Arthur.

¶ Comment le roy ban de benoic, accompaigne de sa
femme et de son filz lancelot, avecques vng seul escuyer, se
partirent du chateau de tribble pour aller querir secours
deuers le roy Artus a la grant bretagne. Fueillet ii.

The Castle of Tribble is
treacherously given up to
Claudas.

¶ Comment apres ce que le roy ban fut party de son
chateau de tribble, le seneschal a qui il auoit baille la garde
trahit ledit chateau, et le liura es mains du roy claudas.

Fueille. ii.

King Ban dies of grief,
and Lancelot is taken
away by the lady of the
lake.

¶ Comment le roy ban mourut de dueil quant il veit son
chateau ardoir et brouyr. Et comment la dame du lac
emporta son filz lancelot.³ Fueillet. iiii.

¶ Comment la royne helaine, apres que le roy fut mort et
elle eut perdu son filz, se rendit nonnain en labbaye du
monstier royal. Fueillet. v.

The two sisters, widows
of kings Ban and Boort,
retreat to a monastery.

¶ Comment le roy de gauues mourut | & comment la
Royne sa femme, pour paour de claudas, sen partit de son
chateau pour aller au monstier royal, ou sa seur estait
rendue, et comment ses enfans Lyonnell et Boort luy furent

ostez. Fueilleet vi.

¶ Comment la royne de Gauues, apres que son seigneur fut mort et que elle eut perdu ses deux enfans, se vint rendre au monastere ou estoit sa seur la royne de benoic.

Fueilleet vi.

Merlin's love for the lady
of the lake.

¶ Comment merlin fut engendre du dyable: Et comment il fut amoureux de la dame du lac. Fueillet vii.

Sir Farien secretly
nourishes the two sons of
king Boort, and is made
seneschal to king Claudas.

¶ Comment le cheualier farien, qui auoit tollu a la royne de Gauues ses deux enfans, les emporta en sa maison | et les feist nourrir vne espace de temps. Et comment le roy claudas fut amoureux de la femme du dict Farien | et pource le fist son seneschal. Fueillet viii.

Claudas accuses Sir
Farien of treason.

¶ Comment le roy claudas fist appeller son cheualier farien de trahison par ladmonnestement de sa femme, disant quil gardoit les deux enfans du roy boort de gauues.

Fueilleet. viii.

Claudas, in disguise, visits
Arthur's court.

¶ comment le roy claudas en maniere de cheualier estrange, se partit du royaume de gauues pour aller en la grant bretagne a la court du roy artus pour veoir sa puissance & son gouuernement. Fueillet x.

The lady of the lake
informs Lancelot that he is
a king's son.

¶ Comment la dame du lac bailla a lancelot vng maistre pour linstruyre comme il appartenoit a filz de roy.

Fueilleet xii.

¶ Comment la royne helaine alloit faire chascun iour son

dueil au lieu ou son seigneur mourut | et de la alloit au lac ou elle perdit son filz. Fueillet xv.

¶ Comment le bon Religieux qui auoit dit nouuelles a la royne helaine de son filz lancelet, print conge de elle, et sen vint au roy artus en la grant bretagne. Fueillet xvi.

The lady of the lake seeks
to deliver the sons of king
Boort.

¶ Comment la dame du lac enuoya sa damoyselle a la court du roy claudas, pour delyurer les deux enfans au roy boort que claudas tenoit en prison. Fueillet xvii.

¶ Comment farien, seneschal du roy claudas par le commandement de son seigneur, alla querir en prison les deux filz au roy de Gauues. Fueillet xviii.

Lyonnel and Boort wound
king Claudas, and slay his
son Dorin.

¶ Comment les deux enfans au roy de gauues blecerent le roy claudas, & occirent dorin son filz | et comment la damoyselle du lac les emmena en semblance de deux leuriers. fueil. xix.

¶ De la grant ioye et du grant honneur que la dame du lac fist aux deux enfans quant elle les veit en sa maison.

Fueillet xx.

Claudás bewails his son's
death.

¶ Comment le roy claudas mena tres grant dueil pour la mort de dorin son filz que boort auoit occis. Fueillet
xx.

¶ Comment farien et le peuple de la cyte de gauues sesmeurent contre le roy claudas a cause que il vouloit faire mourir les deux filz au roy boort de gauues. Fueillet.
xxi.

Farien saves Claudas' life.

¶ Comment le roy claudas se partit de gauues | et comment ceulx dudit lieu le vouloient occire, se neust este

farien le bon cheualier. f. xxiii.

¶ Comment le roy claudas se deffendit vaillamment
contre ceulx de Gauues qui le vouloyent occire.

Fueillet. xxv.

¶ Comment lyonnel et boort perdirent le boire et le
manger pource quilz ne scauoyent nouuelles de leur maistres
| lesquelz estoyent demourez auec le roy claudas | &
comment la dame du lac enuoya vne sienne damoyselle a
gauues pour les amener. Fueillet. xxvii.

Leonce and Lambegues
go to seek Lyonnel and
Boort.

¶ Comment, par le conseil des barons de gauues: leonce
& lambegues sen allerent auecques la damoyselle pour veoir
leurs seigneurs lyonnel et boort. Fueillet xxviii.

¶ Comment la dame du lac sen retourna apres ce quelle
eut monstre a leonce et a lambegues les enfans du roy de
gauues leurs seigneurs, et comment lesditz cheualiers sen
retournerent a gauues. Fueillet xxx.

Claudass meditates
revenge.

¶ Comment le roy claudas retourna a gauues, pour soy
venger de la honte quon luy auoit faicte, et pour la mort de
son filz. Fueil. xxxi.

¶ Comment l'appointement fut fait entre le roy claudas et
les barons, par le moyen de farien et lambegues son nepueu.
fueillet. xxxiii.

Death of Farien.

¶ Comment farien | sa femme, et son nepueu lambegues
sen partirent pour aller veoir lyonnel et boort, qui estoyent
au lac | & comment farien mourut. Fueillet xxxv.

The widow of king Boort
sees her children and
Lancelot in a vision, and
dies.

¶ Comment les deux roynes menerent sainte vie au

monstier royal | et comment celle de gauues veit ces deux
enfans & lancelot en aduision | et comment elle trespasa de
ce siecle. Fueillet. xxxv.

Arthur holds a
tournament, and Banin,
son of king Ban, is the
victor.

¶ Comment le roy artus assembla le iour de pasques tous
ses barons, & tint grant court a karahes, et comment banin le
filleul au Roy ban emporta le pris du behourdys celluy iour.

Fueillet. xxxvi.

The lady of the lake sends
Lancelot to Arthur to be
knighted, and provides for
him white armour.

¶ Comment la dame du lac se pourpensa de mener
lancelot au roy artus pour le faire cheualier, ⁴ et elle luy
bailla armes blanches, et partit du lac a tout quarante
cheualliers pour le conuoyer. Fueillet xxxvii.

Of the wounded knight
who came to Arthur's
court.

¶ Comment vng cheuallier naure, lequel auoit vne espee
fichee en la teste et deux troncons de lance parmy le corps, ⁵
vint a la court du roy artus | et comment la dame du lac le
mena deuant le roy artus, et luy prya quil le fist cheualier.

Fueillet xxxix.

Lancelot is knighted.

¶ Comment messire yuain, a qui le roy Artus auoit
recommande lancelot, alla faire sa requeste audit roy artus,
que le lendemain il fist ledit lancelot cheualier, et comment
ledit lancelot defferra le cheualier naure. ⁶ Fueillet.
xli.

How the white knight
defended the lady of
Nohalt,

¶ Comment la dame de noehault ⁷ enuoya deuers le roy

artus, luy supplier quil luy enuoyast secours contre le Roy
de norhombellande qui luy menoit guerre. Et comment
Lancelot requist au roy artus quil luy donnast congie dy aller
| & il luy octroya. Fueillet xlii.

and won the battle for her.

¶ Comment le nouveau cheualier aux armes blanches
vainquit la bataille pour la dame de noehault. Fueillet
xliii.

¶ Comment lancelot apres ce quil se fut party de la dame
de noehault, se combatit avec vng cheualier qui lauoit
mouille. Fueillet xlv.

How Lancelot conquered
the “Sorrowful Castle.”

¶ Comment lancelot conquist vaillamment par sa force et
proesse le chasteau de la douloureuse garde *que* nul aultre ne
pouoit conquerre.⁸ Fueillet xlv.

How Arthur hears of it,
and sends Gawain to see if
it is true.

¶ Comment les nouvelles vindrent au roy artus que la
douloureuse garde estoit conquise par la cheualier aux armes
blanches | Et le roy y enuoya messire gauuain pour en
scauoir la verite. Fueillet xlvi.

Gawain is imprisoned, and
supposed to be dead.

¶ Comment messire Gauuain fut mys en prison | et
comment le roy et la royne entrerent en la premiere porte de
la | et la veirent des tumbes ou il y auoit escript que
monseigneur gauuain estoit mort, et plusieurs aultres
cheualiers. Fueillet. xlix.

Lancelot hears of
Gawain’s imprisonment,

¶ Comment vne damoyselle de lhostel de la dame du lac
feist assaouir au cheuallier blanc que monseigneur gauuain
& ses compaignons estoyent emprisonnez par celluy qui
auoit este seigneur de la douloureuse garde. Fueillet

l.

and delivers him and his
companions.

¶ Comment le blanc cheualier se combatit encontre
celluy qui auoit este seigneur de la douloureuse garde, qui
tenoit en prison messire gauvain et ses compaignons. ⁹

Fueillet. l.

¶ Comment le cheuallier blanc emmena le cheualier
conquis en vng hermitaige. et comment ledit cheualier
conquis luy rendit audit hermitage gauvain & ses
compaignons. f. lii.

Gawain returns to Arthur
and his Queen at
Douloureuse Garde.

¶ Comment messire gauvain et ses compaignons sen
vindrent par deuers le roy artus qui estoit a la douloureuse
garde. Et comment le roy et la royne furent ioyeux quant ilz
les virent. Fueillet. liii.

Lancelot hears of the war
to come between Arthur
and Galiot.

¶ Comment le cheuallier blanc retourna a labbaye ou il
auoit laisse ses escuyers | et comment il sceut lassemblée qui
deuoit estre entre le roy artus et le roy doultre les marches,
& comment il conquist le cheualier qui disoit mieulx aymer
le cheualier qui auoit naure que celluy qui lauoit este. ¹⁰

Fueillet. liiii.

Gawain goes to seek the
white knight,

¶ Comment messire gauvain se mist en queste pour
trouuer le blanc cheuallier. ¹¹ Et comment la meslee dentre
les gens au roy des cent cheualiers et les gens de la dame de
noehault fut appaisee. Fueillet lv.

who is wounded in the
battle against Galiot by
the king-of-a-hundred-
knights.

¶ Comment le blanc cheualier vainquit lassemble dentre
les deux roys | et comment il fut naure du roy des cent
cheualiers. Fueillet. lvi.

Arthur and Queen Genure
return home.

¶ Comment apres que le cheualier qui auoit gangne le
tournoyement dentre le roy doultre les marches sen fut alle,
le roy artus & la royne genieure se partirent pour aller en
leurs pays. Fueillet lvii.

¶ Comment messire gauvain se combatit a brehain-sans-
pitie, et le rua par terre. et comment apres ilz sen allerent a la
douloureuse garde: & comment les deux pucelles que
messire Gauvain menoit luy furent tollues. Fueillet.
lviii.

Lancelot ends the
adventures of the
“Sorrowful Castle.”

¶ Comment lancelot print congie de son mire | et
comment il mist a fin les aduentures de la douloureuse
garde. Fueillet lx.

Lancelot is again
victorious in the combat
between Arthur and
Galiot.

¶ Comment messire gauvain recouura les deux pucelles
qui luy auoyent este tollues, Et comment lancelot vainquit la
seconde assemblee dentre le roy artus & le roy doultre les
marches. Fueillet lxi.

Gawain returns to
Arthur’s court.

¶ Comment messire gauvain retourna a la court du roy
artus apres la seconde assemblee dentre le roy artus & le roy
doultre les marches, et comment lancelot vainquit le
cheualier qui gardoit le gue. Fueillet lxiii.

[*Here begins the Scotch Translation.*]

Arthur's evil dreams.

¶ Comment le roy Artus songea plusieurs songes | et apres manda tous les saiges clerks de son royaume pour en scauoir la signifiante. ¹² Fueillet lxiiii.

Galiot defies Arthur.

¶ Comment le roy doultre les marches, nomme gallehault, enuoya deffier le roy artus ¹³ | et comment Lancelot occist deux geans empres kamalot. ¹⁴ Fueillet lxxv.

Lancelot is assailed by
forty knights, and
imprisoned by the lady of
Melyhalt.

¶ Comment lancelet occist vng cheualier qui disoit moins aymer le cheualier naure que celluy qui lauait naure. ¹⁵ | et comment il fut assailly de .xl. cheualliers, et mys en prison de la dame de mallehault. ¹⁶ Fueillet lxxviii.

Lancelot, released from
prison, is again victorious
against Galiot.

¶ Comment gallehault assembla au roy artus vng iour durant que lancelet estoit en prison ¹⁷ | et comment le lendemain lancelet fut deliure de prison ¹⁸ | et vainquit lassemblee dentre les deux roys. ¹⁹ Fueillet lxxvii.

Arthur is reproved by
Amytans, and Galiot
proposes a truce for a
year.

¶ Comment le roy artus fut reprins de ses vices, et moult bien conseille par vng cheualier qui suruint en son ost ²⁰ | Et comment gallehault donna tresues au roy Artus iusques a vng an. ²¹ Fueillet lxxix.

Lancelot returns to the
lady of Melyhalt.

¶ Comment lancelet, apres ce quil eut vaincu lassemblee, retourna en la prison de la dame de mallehault ²²

| et comment elle le congneut, a son cheual et par les playes
quil auoit, que cestoit celluy qui auoit vaincu lassemblee.²³

Fueillet lxxii.

Gawain, with 39
comrades, departs to seek
the red knight.

¶ Comment messire gauuain, soy quarantiesme de
compaignons, se mist en queste pour trouuer le cheuallier
qui auoit porte lescu vermeil a lassemblee dentre le roy artus
et Gallehault.²⁴ Fueillet lxxii.

The lady of Melyhalt
accepts Lancelot's
ransom.

¶ Comment la dame de mallehault mist a rancon le
cheuallier quelle tenoit en prison, et le laissa aller quant elle
veit quelle ne peult scauoir son nom.²⁵ fu. lxxiii.

The truce ended, Galiot
again attacks Arthur.

¶ Comment messire gauuain et ses compaignons
retournerent de leur queste²⁶ | et comment apres les treues
faillies galehault vint assembler contre le roy artus, & tous
ses gens en furent moult troublez.²⁷ fu. lxxiiii.

Galiot gains over the
black knight.

¶ Comment gallehault suyuit le cheuallier aux noires
armes,²⁸ & fist tant par belles parolles quil lemmena en son
ost, dont le roy artus et tous ses gens en furent moult
troublez. Fueillet lxxviii.

Lancelot induces Galiot to
submit to Arthur.

¶ Comment lancelot par sa prouesse conquist tout, et fist
tant que gallehault crya mercy au roy artus. fu. lxxix.

The Queen and Lancelot
meet.

¶ Comment gallehault fist tant que la royne vit lancelot |
& comment ilz se arraisonnerent ensemble. fu. lxxx.

The Queen knows
Lancelot from his
adventures that he tells
her.

¶ *Comment la royne congneut lancelot apres ce quil eut
longuement parle a elle, & quil luy eut compte de ses
aduentures. & comment la premiere acointance fut faicte
entre la royne & lancelot par le moyen de galehault.* fu. lxxxii.

Galiot becomes
acquainted with the lady
of Melyhalt.

¶ *Comment la premiere acointance fut faicte de galehault
& de la dame de malehault par le moyen de la royne de
logres, & comme[nt] lancelot & galehault sen alloient
esbatre & deuiser auecques leurs dames.* fu. lxxxiiii.

II. The Chapter of the French romance from which the translator has taken the beginning of his First Book is here given, in order to shew in what manner he has treated his original. It begins at Fol. lxiii. a, col. 1.

Arthur's evil dreams.

*Comment le roy artus songea plusieurs songes, et apres
manda tous les sages clerchez de son royaume pour
en scauoir la signifiante.*

OR dit le compte ^{King Arthur's knights} ~~que le roy artus auoit~~
longuement sejourne a cardueil. ^{his knights are annoyed at meeting}
~~le roy auoit~~ mie grandement de aduentures, il ennuya
moult aux compaignons du Roy de ce quilz auoient si
longuement sejourne, & ne veoient riens de ce quilz
souloyent veoir. Principalement keu le seneschal en fut trop
ennuye Et en parloit moult souuent, et disoyt deuant le roy
que trop estoit ce sejour ennuyeulx, & trop auoit dure. Le
roy luy demande "Keu | *que* voudriez vous que nous
feissons?" ^{Sir Kay counsels that the king should make} ~~"Certes," fait keu, "le~~

conseilleroye que nous allissions a kamalot | car la cite est plus aduantureuse *que* vous ayez | et la nous verrions souuent et orrions choses de merueilles que nous ne voyons pas icy. Nous auons seiourne ia icy plus de deux moys, et oncques ne y veismes gueres de choses aduenir.” The king ~~consent~~ *donc* fait le roy, “a Kamalot, puis que vous le *conseillez*.”

but the same night dreams that all his hair ~~La nuit~~ *Lendemain* deust partir le roy | mais la nuyct luy aduint vne merueilleuse aduenture. Il songa *que* tous les cheueulx de sa teste cheoient, et *tous* les poilz de sa barbe, dont il fut moult espouente. Et *par* ce demoura encores en la ville. The third night after he dreams that all his fingers ~~La tierce nuit~~ *après* il songa *que* il luy estoit aduis *que* tous les dois luy cheoient fors les poulces, & lors fut plus esbahy que deuant.

A Autre nuyct songea ~~les ongles~~ *Again*, that all his toes fall off except ~~les ongles~~ *les ongles*. des piedz luy cheoient fors les poulces. de ce fut si trouble que plus ne peult. The Queen and his chaplain disregard ~~son chappelain~~ *and the* chappelain a qui il lauoit dit, “ne vous chaille | car songes ne sont pas a croire;” le roy le dit a la royne, et elle respond tout ainsi *que* luy auoit fait son chappelain. but Arthur sends for his bishops, archbishops, and monks; ~~En uerite~~ *“En uerite,”* dist il; “ie ne laisseray pas la chose ainsi” | il fait mander ses euesques et archeuesques quilz soient a luy au .ix iour ensuyuant a kamalot, & quilz amainent avec eulx tous les plus sages clercz quilz pourroient auoir et trouuer. whom he imprisons till they shall tell ~~Antant se part de cardeuil~~ *Antant se part de cardeuil* & sen va par les chasteaulx et par les citez | tant *que* au neufniesme iour est venu a kamalot, et aussi sont venus les clercz du pays. Il leur demande conseil de son songe, *et* ilz elisent dix des plus sages: le roy les fist bien enserrer, et dist que iamais nen sortiroient de prison deuant quilz luy auroient dit la signifiante de son songe. After trying to ~~Ilz esproouerent~~ *Ilz esproouerent* la force de leur science par neuf iours, et puis vindrent au roy, & dirent quilz nauoient riens trouue. “Ainsi maist dieu,” dit le roy, “ia ainsi neschapperez.” They twice obtain a delay of ten days.

respit iusques au troisesme iour ensuyuant, et il leur donne. Les .iii. iours passez, ilz reuiennent deuant le roy, et dient que ilz ne peuvent riens trouuer | et demandent encores autre delay | et ilz ont. Et de rechief vindrent pour demander aultres troys iours de dilacion, ainsi que le roy auoit songe de tierce nuyt en tierce nuyt. “Or sachez,” fait le roy, “que iamais plus nen aurez.”

The king went to sleep. The next morning, the three knights came before him and said that they had found nothing; “it is of no use,” said the king, “I will never have any more.” Quant vint au tiers iour ilz dirent quilz nauoient rien trouue; “ce ne vault rien,” fait le roy, “ie vous feray tous destruire se vous ne me dictes la verite;” et ils dirent. “Sire nous ne vous en scairions que dire.” Lors se pense le roy quil leur fera paour de mort.

Five are to be hung, and a great fire shall be made. Il fait fair ung grant feu, & commanda en leurs presences que les .v. y fussent mis, et que les autres cinq soyent penduz | mais priueement deffent a ses baillifz quilz ne les menassent que iusques a la paour de mourir.

The five who are to be hung, having the cords round their necks, were brought before the king. When the five saw the great fire, they were so afraid of death that they confessed the truth. Quant les cinq furent menez aux fourches euerent les cordes entour leurs colz, ils eurent paour de mourir, et dirent, que se les aultres cinq le vouloyent dire, ilz le diroyent. La nouuelle vint au .v. que len menoit ardre | et ilz dirent que, se les autres le vouloyent dire, ils le diroyent |

They stipulate not to be held as liars if their companions do the same. Les autres cinq se menent ensemble deuant le roy, et les plus sages dirent | “sire, nous vous dirons ce que nous auons trouue | mais nous ne voudrions mie que vous nous tenissiez a menteurs se il ne aduenoit | car nous voudrions bien quil nen fust rien, et voulons, comment quil en aduiengne, que vous nous asseurez que ia mal ne nous en aduiendra;” et il leur promet.

The dreams mean that he will lose his kingdom and his life. Lors dist l'ung de ceulx qui pour tous parla. “Sire, sachez que ceste terre et tout honneur vous conuiendra perdre et ceulx en qui plus vous fiez vous fauldront; telle est la substance et signifiance de voz songes.”

Arthur asks if anything can be said to save him. De ceste chose fut le roy moult effraye, “Or me dictes,” fait il, “sil est chose qui men peult garantir.” “Certes,” fait le maistre, “nous auons veu une chose | Mais cest si grande merueille que on ne le pourroyt penser, et ne la vous osons dire.” “Dictes,” fait il, “seurement | car pis ne me pouez vous dire que vous mauez

dit.” He is told, “nothing, except the savage lion and the leech without medicine, by help of ~~which, unless ne vous~~ ^{“Sire, niens ne vous} peult garder de perdre tout honneur terrien fors le lyon sauluaige, et le mire sans medecine, par le conseil de la fleur, & se nous semble estre si grande folie que nous ne losions dire | Car lyon sauluaige ne y peult estre, ne mire sans medecine | ne fleur qui parlast |” le roy est moult entreprins de ceste chose: mais plus en fait belle chiere que le cueur ne luy apporte. ~~Un iour alla le~~ ^{Un iour alla le} roy chasser au boys bien matin | et mena avec luy messire gauvain, keu le seneschal, et ceulx qui lui pleust. Si laisse icy le compte a parler de luy, et retourne a parler du cheualier dont messire Gauvain aporta le nom en court.

Quant ²⁹ le cheuallier ~~qui d'ensemble auoyt vaincu~~ ^{qui d'ensemble auoyt vaincu} se partast de la ou il se combatist a son hoste, il erra toute iour sans autre aduanture trouuer. Il se logea la nuyt chiez une veufue dame a lyssue dune forest a cinq lieues angleches pres de kamelot. ~~Le cheualier se leua~~ ^{Le cheualier se leua}, et erra, luy et ses escuyers et sa damoyselle, tant quil encontra vng escuyer. ~~and a varlet, fait il, “scaez tu nulles nouuelles?”~~ ^{and a varlet, fait il, “scaez tu nulles nouuelles?”} “Ouy,” fait il, ~~“The queen, ma dame la royne est icy pres a kamalot.”~~ ^{“The queen, ma dame la royne est icy pres a kamalot.”} “quelle royne” fait il ~~“Le femme au roy artus,”~~ ^{“Le femme au roy artus,”} fait lescuyer. Lancelot goes on till he sees a large house, and a lady and her counsel. Le cheualier se part, et cheuauche tant quil treuve vne maison forte, et voit vne dame en son surcot, qui regardoit les prez et la forest | & auoit avec elle vne damoiselle. ~~Le cheualier se arreste, et regarde la dame moult longuement tant quil oublie tout autre chose. Et maintenant passa vng cheuallier arme de toutes armes, qui luy dist.~~ ^{Le cheualier se arreste, et regarde la dame moult longuement tant quil oublie tout autre chose. Et maintenant passa vng cheuallier arme de toutes armes, qui luy dist.} An armed knight, passing, asks him what he is ~~regardant, que vous attendez vous?”~~ ^{regardant, que vous attendez vous?”} et celluy ne respond mot | car il ne la pas ouy. Et le cheualier le boutte, et luy demande quil regarde. He replies, that he ~~le regarde,”~~ ^{le regarde,”} fait il, “ce que me plaist: Et vous nestes mie courtois, qui de mon penser me auez iecte.” The knight asks if ~~Par la foy que vous~~ ^{Par la foy que vous} deuez o dieu,” fait le cheuallier estrange, ~~“scauez vous bien qui la dame est que vous regardez?”~~ ^{“scauez vous bien qui la dame est que vous regardez?”} “Je le cuyde bien scauoir,”

fait le bon cheualier. “Et qui este elle,” fait lautre. and he
 replies that “Cest ma dame la royne.” “Si maist dieu,
 estrangement la congnoissez, deables vous font bien
 regarder dames.” “Pourquoy,” faict il. “Pource que vous ne
 me oseriez suyuir par deuant la Royne la ou ie yroye.”
 “Certes,” faict le bon cheuallier, “se vous osiez aller la ou ie
 vous oseray suyuir, vous aurez passez de couraige tous les
 plus grans oseurs qui oncques furent.” A tant sen part le
 cheualier. Et le bon cheualier va apres. The stranger takes
 Lancelot. Et quant ilz ont une piece alle, lautre luy dist, “vous
 he[r]bergerez ennuyt avec moy, et le matin ie vous meneray
 la ou ie vous diz;” et le bon cheuallier luy demande sil
 conuient ainsi faire. “Oy” | fait il. Et il dist que donc
 lottroyera il. Il gentils avient chez le cheualier sur la riuiera
 de kamalot, et fut moult bien herberge, et sa pucelle | et ses
 escuyers.

III. Our last extract will shew exactly where the Scottish poem suddenly ceases,
 and how the story was probably continued. For the latter purpose, four chapters
 of the French Romance are added beyond the point where the Scotch ends; and it
 is possible (judging from lines 306-312 of the Prologue) that the author did not
 intend to go very much further. The passage begins, in the French copy, at Fol.
 lxxvii. b, col. 1; and, in the Scotch poem, at [l. 3427](#).

Lors descent de son cheual, et la baille au cheualier.
 Et celluy si y monte, sans arrest. Et gallehault monta
 sur vng autre, et vient a son conroy | and gallehault mounts Lancelot.
 les dix mille, et dit quilz voient assembler deuant; “et
 vous,” fait il au roy vend, “viendres apres, si ne assemblerez
 mie si tost comme ceulx cy seront assemblez | mais quant
 les derrains de ceulx de dela seront venus, vous assemblerez,
 & moy mesmes vous iray querir.” He commands the trumpets to
 ne les dix mille pour assembler, ³⁰ Et quant il fut entre en la
 bataille il fist sonner ses busines tant *que* tout en
 retentissoit. ³¹ Quant le noir cheualier les ouyt venir, si luy
 sembla que grant effort de gens eut la, si se retrait vng pou
 vers les siens, et les appella entour luy, & leur dist. Lancelot
 tous vous estes tous amys du roy. Or y perra comment vous
 le ferez.” ³² Sir Yvain. Et messire yvain, qui les vit venir, dist
 a ses gens, “Or soyes tous asseurs *que* nous ne perdrons au
 iourdhuy *par* force de gens.” ³³ Et ce disoit il pource quil
 cuidoit *que* les gens gallehault fussent tous venus. ³⁴

Quant les .x.m. de gallehault sassemblerent, si fut
 grande la noise, et moult en abbatent a leur venir | mais
 quant messire yvain vint, si reconforta moult les gens du roy
 artus | et tous les fuyans retournent avec luy. Et gallehault sen
 va arriere a son conroy, et commande quilz cheuauchent
 fermement | et quilz se frappent es gens du roy artus ³⁵ de
 telle maniere ³⁶ que nul dentreulz ne demeure a
 cheual “Vous estes tous frays. Or y perra comment vous le
 ferez.” A tant cheuauchent les conroys deuers leurs gens,
 Car ilz auoyent ia du pire. Galiot’s reserve arrives, while prevail.
 Et quant le conroy de Gallehault fut venu, si changa moult laffaire | Car
 moult y auoyt grant effort de gens. Et fut a leur venue le
 cheualier noir mis a terre. ³⁷ Et aussi les six compaignons
 qui toute iour auoyent este pres de luy. ³⁸ Lors vint

gallehault, qui le remonta sur le cheual mesmes ou son corps seoit. ³⁹ Et si tost comme il fut monte, il sen reuint a la meslee aussi frays comme il auoit le iour este. Et quant il vint aux coups donner, tous ceulx qui le veoyent sen esmerueilloient, Ainsi dura la bataille iusques a la nuyt.

~~Et quant il vint au soir ilz se departirent | et toutesfoys les gens du roy Artus en eurent du meilleur.~~ ⁴⁰ ~~Et quant il vint au soir ilz se departirent | et toutesfoys les gens du roy Artus en eurent du meilleur.~~ Lancelot tries to ~~cheualier se departit de lost le plus coyement quil peut,~~ ⁴⁰ ~~cheualier se departit de lost le plus coyement quil peut,~~ et sen alla par vng chemin entre les prestz et vng tertre, et cuyda que nul ne le veist | mais Gallehault sen print tres bien garde, ~~et puis qu'il tant son cheual qui luy fut au deuant par vne adresse, et le vint rencontrer au pied du tertre. Si le salue, et dit 'que dieu le conduit.'~~ ~~Et celuy le regarde en trauers, et luy a a moult grant peine rendu son salut.~~ “Bel amy,” fait gallehault, “qui estes vous?” “Sire,” fait il, “ie suis vng cheualier, ce pouez vous veoir.” ~~who prays him to lodge with him.~~ ~~fait gallehault, “cheualier estes vous meilleur qui soit | & vous estes lhomme du monde que plus ie voudroye honnourer,~~ ⁴¹ ~~et si vous suis venu prier que vous herbergez ceste nuyt avec moy.” Et il luy dist ainsi comme sil ne lauoit huy veu, “Qui estes vous, sire, qui me auez prie de me he[r]berger?” “Je suis gallehault, le sire de ces gens icy, vers qui vous auez au iourdhuy guaranty le royaulme de logres, lequel ie eusse ia conquis se ne fust vostre corps.” “Comment” (fait il) “vous estes ennemy de monseigneur le roy artus, et me priez de herberger? |~~ ~~Lancelot at first refuses, till Galiot agrees to do whatever Lancelot may require.~~ ~~Avec vous ne herbergeray ie mie en ce point.” “Haa sire,” faict gallehault, “plus feray ie pour vous, et si nay mye a commencer. Et ie vous prie que vous y herbergiez par tel conuenant que ie feray tout ce que me scaurez requerre.” A tant se arresta le cheuallier, et dist a gallehault; “Sire, vous promettez assez | mais ie ne scay comment il est du rendre” | et gallehault luy dist. ~~and promises to entertain him upon his own terms.~~ ~~“Sire, se vous he[r]bergez ennuyt avec moy, ie vous donneray tout ce que vous oserez diuiser de bouche, et bien vous en feray seur,”~~ ~~whereupon they return to gallehault's camp.~~ ~~Et lors luy fiance, & apres luy promet bailler bons plaiges; Adonc sen vont tous~~~~

deux en lost.

¶ Comment gallehault suyuit le cheuallier aux noires
armes, et fist tant par belles parolles quil lemmena
en son ost, donc le roy artus & tous ses gens en
furent moult troublez.

MEssire gauvain Gawain, sawyn auoyt avecuallier le with the knight
cheuallier au noir escu, & le eust volentiers suiuy sil eust
peu monter a cheual. tells the Queen Lors regarde contre, then looks against val la
riuiere, et voit gallehault et le cheuallier noir qui
retournoyent pour venir a lost, et dist a la royne, “Haa dame,
or pouons nous bien dire que nous sommes gens perdus |
regardez que gallehault a conquis par scauoir,” Et elle
regarde, & voyt *que* cest le cheuallier noir *que* gallehault
emmaine; si en est tant iree quelle ne peut dire mot. and swoons away
messire gauvain se pasme en pou dheure plus de
trois fois. Le roi artus vint leans | et ouyt le cry *que* chascun
disoit, “il est mort, il est mort.” Si vint a luy, et leembrassa, et
commenca a plorer moult tendrement. Et reuient
monseigneur Gauvain de pasmoison; He tells Arthur that his time
prant il veit le roy artus, il commence a le blasmer, et dit.
“Ores est venu le terme que les clerchez vous disrent. for their
pretre tresor que vous auez huy perdu. celluy vous toldra terre
qui toute iour la vous a garantie par son corps, et se vous
fussiez preudhomme vous leussiez retenu, ainsi comme a
fait le plus preudhomme qui viue, qui par cy deuant
lemmaine.” Arthur also sees Galiot, and is deeply grieved, but tries to
voit le roy gallehault, qui emmenoit le cheuallier, dont il a tel
dueil que a pou quil ne est cheut | mais de plorer ne se peut
tenir, et toutesfois fait il la plus belle chere *quil* peut pour
son nepueu reconforter. Et si tost *que* il vit en la salle, il fist
grant dueil | aussi fist chascun preudhomme.

TAnt sont allez Galiot and Lance gallehault et le cheualier
quilz sont venus empres lost, Adonc luy dist le cheualier,

and Lancelot asks to speak with the two men **“Sire, ains que ie entre dedans vostre ost, faictes moi parler aux deux plus preudhommes que vous ayez et esquelz vous fiez le plus.”** Et gallehault lottroye. Lors sen va en son tref, et prent deux des hommes du monde ou plus il se fie, et leur dist, **“Venez avec moy et vous verrez le plus riche homme du monde.”** **“Comment,”** font ilz, **“nestes vous mie le plus riche qui soit au monde?”** Galiot takes him to the “first-conquest” king and the king of a my, **“dist ilz, “mais ie le seray ains que ie dorme.”** Ces deux estoyent le roy premier conquis | et le roi des cent cheualliers. Quant ilz virent le cheuallier, si lui firent moult grant ioye | Car ilz le congneurent bien par ses armes. Et le cheuallier leur demanda qui ilz estoient | et ilz se nommerent sicomme vous auez ouy | et il leur dist. **“Seigneurs, vostre sire vous faict moult grant honneur | Car il dit que vous estes les deux hommes du monde que plus il ayme, et entre luy et moy a vne conuenance que ie vueil que vous oyez | Car il ma fiance que pour en nuyt herberger avec luy me donnera ce que ie luy voudray demander.”** Lancelot repeats to them his **gallehault dist, “vous dictes verite.”** **“Sire,”** faict le cheuallier, **“ie vueil encores auoir la seurte de ses hommes.”** Et gallehault dist, **“Dictes moy comment.”** and takes their pledge that they will forsake Galiot if he breaks his agreement, and will **“ilz me fianceront,”** fait le cheuallier, **“que se vous me faillez de conuenant, ilz vous guerpiron et sen viendront avec moy la ou ie diray,”** Et gallehault dit que ainsi le veult | et il le fait fiancer. Lors appella gallehault le roy premier conquis a vne part, et luy dist. **“Allez auant & dictes a mes barons quilz assemblent maintenant a monstre si honnorablement comme ilz pourront, et gardez que en mon tref soient tous les deduys que len pourra trouuer en tout lost.”** Galiot orders all kinds of entertainment **Lors sen va ce luy au ferir des esperons, & fist le commandement de son seigneur. Et gallehault tient le cheualier aux parolles, luy & son seneschal, tant que le commandement fust fait.** Twenty-eight kings, beside dukes and counts, come to the feast, and honour Lancelot as the flower of the knighthood **une guerre que encontre eulx vindrent deux cens barons qui**

tous estoient hommes de gallehault, .xxviii. roys, et les autres estoient ducz et contes; la fut le cheuallier tellement honnoure que oncques si grant feste ne fut pour vng homme mescongneu comme len fit pour luy a celle fois | et disoient grans & petis, “Bien viengnez, la fleur de la cheualerie du monde” | et il en auoit grant honte. Ainsi vindrent iusques au tref de gallehault, si ne pourroient estre comtez les deduys et les instrumens qui leans estoient. Lancelot is richly attired, and ~~aduly receu~~, et quant il fut desarme, gallehault luy fit apporter vne robe moult riche, et il la vestit. quant le manger fut prest, ilz se assirent a table, et furent noblement seruis, et le cheualier fut moult honnoure.

A Pres manger After supper four beds are prepared, one larger ~~commande gallehault~~ a faire quatre litz desquelz lung estoit plus grant que les aultres. Quant les litz furent si richement atournez, gallehault maine le cheuallier coucher. Et dist. “Sire, vous gerrez icy;” “Et qui gerra de la?” fait le cheualier. “Quatre sergens,” faict gallehault, “qui vous serviront | Et ie iray en vne chambre par dela, affin que vous soyez icy plus en paix.” “Haa, Sire, pour dieu,” faict il, “ne me faictes gesir plus ayse que ces aultres cheualiers | car tant ne me deuez a vilennir.” “Nayez garde,” faict galehault, “Car ia pour chose que vous faciez pour moi vous ne serez tenu a villain.” Galiot awhile departs, ~~atant sen part gallehault~~. Et le cheuallier commence a penser au grant honneur que gallehault luy faisoit. Si lenprise moult | puis se coucha, et tantost il sendormit | car moult estoit las; Galiot then returns, and ~~regallehault~~ sceut quil fut endormy, le plus coyement quil peut se coucha en vng autre lit empres luy | et es deux aultres litz se coucherent deux cheualiers, et nestoyent en la chambre que eulx quatre, sans plus. and hears how his guest ~~myt se plaindre~~ le cheualier en son dormant, et gallehault loit bien, car il ne dormoit gueres. Ains pensa toute la nuyt a le retenir. Next day, ~~le cheualier~~ se leua et alla ouyr messe; et ia estoit gallehault leue | car il ne voulut mie que le

cheualier laperceust. and Lancelot then demands that Galiot, wishing to depart.
vindrent du monstier, le cheualier demanda ses armes, &
gallehault demande pourquoy. Et il dist quil sen vouloit
aller. Et gallehault luy dist. “Beau doulx amy, demourez | et
ne cuydez mye que ie vous vueille deceuoir. Car vous
noserez ia riens demander que vous navez. Et sachez que
vous pourriez bien auoir compagnie de plus riche homme
que ie suis | mais vous ne laurez iamais a homme qui plus
vous ayme.” “Sire,” faict le cheuallier, “ie demoureray donc
puis quil vous plaist. Car meilleure compagnie que la
vostre ne pourroye ie mye auoir | Mais ie vous diray
presentement le don pourquoy ie demoureray auec vous | et
se ie ne lay, ie ny demoureray ia.” but again promises to do for him
fait gallehault, “dictes seurement et vous laurez, se cest
chose que ie puisse acomplir;” Lancelot then demands that Galiot
shall summon the cheualier. Et le cheualier appela ses deux plaiges et dist deuant
eulx, “Je vous demande,” fait il, “que si tost que vous serez
au dessus du roy artus, que vous luy alliez crier mercy si tost
comme ie vous en semondray.” Quant gallehault lentent, si
en est tout esbahy, et commence a penser. Et les deux roys
luy dirent. “A quoy pensez vous icy endroit, de penser nauez
mestier | car vous auez tant couru que vous ne pouez
retourner.” Galiot is confounded, and ponders, but then grants Lancelot’s request.
fait Gallehault, “cuydez vous que ie me vueille repentir | se
tout le monde estoit mien si luy oseroye ie bien donner. mais
ie pensoye a vng seul mot quil a dit | mais ia dieu ne maist,”
dist il, “se vous nauez le don | car ie ne pourroye riens faire
pour vous ou ie peusse auoir honte. Mais ie vous pryé que
ne me tollez vostre compagnie pour la donner a aultruy;” et
le cheualier luy creanca. Ainsi demoura | et ilz se asseirent
au manger qui estoit appreste. Si font moult grant ioye par
tout lost du cheualier qui est demoure. Lancelot remains with him
en celle nuyt. Lendemain gallehault et son compaignon
allerent ouyr messe, et gallehault luy deist | “Sire, il est huy
iour dassembler; voulez vous armes porter?” “Ouy,” dist il.
“donc porterez vous les miennes,” fait gallehault, “pour le
commencement.” Et il dist quil les porteroit volentiers |

“mais vous ne porterez armes,” feist il a gallehault, “si non
 comme mon sergent?” “Non,” dist il. Lors firent apporter les
 armes, & armerent le cheualier du fort haulbert, & des
 chausses qui trop estoyent longues & lees; Next day, the hosts
 were armed. ~~ors se armerent les~~ gens de gallehault. et pareillement les
 gens du roy Artus, & passerent les lices de telz y eut.
 Tuteffoys le roy auoyt deffendu que nul ne les passast. Si y
 eut de bonnes ioustes en pou dheure | si se assemblerent tous
 les ostz deuant la lice, & commencerent a faire armes. Le
 roy artus estoit a son estandart, et auoit commande que ilz
 menassent la royne a sauliete se la descomfiture tournoit sur
 eulx | quant tous les ostz furent assemblez et le bon
 cheualier fust arme, si cuida chascun que ce fust gallehault,
 & disoyent tous. Lancelot is at first mistaken for Galiot; but is
 not. ~~voicy gallehault, voicy gallehault~~ | messire gauvain le
 congneust bien & dist. “Ce nest mye gallehault | ains est le
 cheualier aux armes noires, le meilleur cheualier du monde”
 | Arthur’s men called him the black knight. ~~ors se armerent les~~ gens de gallehault, & si tost comme ilz furent assemblez,
 oncques ne se tint le roy Artus ne ses gens depuis que le
 cheualier y fut arriue | et trop se desconfortoyent du bon
 cheualier qui contre eulx estoit, si furent menez iusques a la
 lice. car trop estoient grans gens avec gallehault. au partir
 des lices ce tindrent vne piece et souffrirent longuement |
 mais le souffrit ny peut riens valoir. Grant fut le meschief
 des gens au roy artus. et dit le compte *que* le cheualier neust
 mie moins de peine de tenir les gens de gallehault que ilz ne
 passassent oultre la lice quil auoit de chasser les gens au roy
 Artus. Et nompourtant moult les auoit supportez | & il les
 eut mis oultre a force sil eust voulu | mais il demoura emmy
 le pas pour les aultres detenir. Lancelot calls upon the king to be compact. ~~Lors regarda~~
 tout entour de luy, et commenca a hucher | “gallehault,
 gallehault.” et gallehault vient grant alleure, et dist. “bel
 amy, que voulez vous?” “quoy,” faict il, “ie vueil que mon
 conuenant me tenez;” “Par ma foy,” fait gallehault, “ie suis
 tout prest de lacomplir puis quil vous plaist.” Galiot rides
 forward, and finds Arthur ready to kill himself for grief, the Queen being
 escorted away by a guard of forty knights, Lancelot is using his spear. ~~Lors pinqua le cheual des~~

esperons & vient iusques a lestandart ou le roy artus estoit, qui faisoit si tresgrant dueil que a peu quil ne se occioit pource quil estoit desconfit. Si estoit ia la royne montee, et lemmenoyent quarante cheualliers. Et monseigneur gauvain, que on vouloit emporter en lictiere | mais il dit quil aymeroit mieulx mourir en ce point que veoir toute cheualerie morte et honnye: si se pasma tellement que len cuydoit bien que il mourust incontinent.

How Lancelot makes
Galiot cry mercy to
Arthur.

¶ Comment lancelot par la prouesse conquis tout, et fist tant que galehault cria mercy au roy artus.

Q Vant le cheualier veit gallehault prest dacomplir son conuenant, il iura bien que oncques si loyal compaignon ne fut trouue. Il en a telle pytie quil en souspire moult fort, & dit entre ses dens. Galiot de maistre d'Armes, qui pour ce “Had dieu, qui pourra ce desseruir?” & gallehault cheuauche iusques a lestandart et demande le roy artus. Il vient auant moult dolent & esmaye comme celluy qui tout honneur et toute ioye terrienne cuyde auoir perdue; Et quant gallehault le voit, si luy dit. “sire, roy artus, venez auant, & navez paour | car ie vueil a vous parler.” and, at sight of him, et quant le roy l'ouyt, il se merueille moult que ce peult estre; Et de si loing comme galehault le voit venir, il descend de son cheual et se agenouille, et dit. and submit himself to him “Sire, ie vous viens faire droit de ce que ie vous ay meffait; si men repens, et me metz en vostre mercy.”

Q Vant le roy lentend, Arthur, on se voye, pausant il, merueilleusement grant ioye, et lieue les mains vers le ciel, louant Dieu de ceste aduanture | et se le roy fait bonne chere, encores la faict meilleure Gallehault. et il se lieue de genoulx, & sentrebaisent, en font moult grande chere lung a lautre. lors dist Gallehault | “sire, faictes vostre plaisir de moy | car ie

metz en vostre saisine mon corps pour en faire ce que il vous
plaira. Galiot, first asking Arthur's leave, dismisses him. Et si il vous plait, ie.

yray retraire mes gens arriere, & puis reuiendray a vous
incontinent.” “Allez doncques,” fait le roy | “car ie vueil
parler a vous.” A tant sen part gallehault & reuient a ses
gens | & les en faict aller. Et le roy enuoya apres la royne,
qui sen alloit faisant grand dueil. et les messages
cheuauchent tant que ilz lattaingnent | et sont venus a elle, &
luy comptent la ioye que aduenue leur est. Et elle ne le peult
croire tant quelle voy les enseignes que le roy luy enuoye.
tant coururent les nouuelles que monseigneur gauvain le
sceut, lequel en eut grant ioye sur tous les aultres, et dist au
roy. The Queen and Sir Gauvain. Sire, comment a ce. “Certes, ie ne

scay,” fait il: “mais ie croy que telle a este le plaisir de
nostre seigneur.” moult est grande la ioye, & moult se
esmerueille chascun comment ce peult estre adueni.
Gallehault dist a son compaignon. “que voulez vous que ie
face? iay fait vostre commandement; & le roy ma dit que ie
retourne | mais ie vous conuoyeray auant iusques a voz
tentes.” “Haa sire,” fait le cheualier, “aincoys vous irez au
roy & luy porterez le plus grant honneur que vous pourrez.

Lancelot prays Galiot not to reveal where he is, and that he will do it for Et tant auez fait pour
moy que ie ne le pourroye desseruir | mais tant vous pryé,
pour dieu | et pour lamour que vous auez a moy, que nul ne
sache ou ie suis” | ainsi sen vont parlant iusques a leurs
tentes. chascun scait que la paix est faicte | mais plusieurs en
sont dolens | car mieulx aymassent la guerre que la paix. lors
sont descenduz les deux compaignons, et si tost quilz furent
desarmez, Gallehault print vne de ses meilleures robbes pour
aller a la court. et feist cryer par tout son ost que chascun sen
allast, fors tant seullement ceulx de son hostel. Galiot commits

his guest to the care of the two kings, and departs with them. Apres appella les deux roys,
et leur baille son compaignon, & leur commande quilz
facent autant de luy comme de son corps mesmes. A tant
monte Gallehault, et sen va a la court du roy artus. Et le roy
luy vint alencontre, et la royne qui ia estoit retournee, & la
dame de malehault avec plusieurs dames & damoyselles.

Arthur and Galiot go together to the tower where the bretesche ou
monseigneur gauvain gisoit malade. et quant il sceut que
gallehault venoit, il sefforce de belle chere faire, comme
celluy qui oncques mes ne lauoit veu de si pres. Gawain
dist, “bien soyiez vous venu comme de celluy dont ie
desiroye moult lacointance | car vous estes lhomme du
monde qui plus doibt estre prise & ayme a droit de toutes
gens. Et ie cuyde que nul ne scait si bien congnoistre
preudhomme comme vous & bien y a paru.” Ainsi parle
messire gauvain a gallehault, & il luy demande comment il
luy est | et Gauvain dist. “Jay este pres de mort. mais la
grant amour qui est entre vous & le roy ma guery.” The
Queen, the King, and Gawain were all glad to see the
Moult font grant ioye le roy artus & la
royne & monseigneur gauvain de la venue de gallehault | et
tout le iour ont parle de amour et dacointance. Mais du noir
cheualier ne tiennent ilz nulles parolles | ains passent le iour
a resioury lung lautre tant quil vint au vespre. Lors demande
gallehault congie de ses gens aller veoir. but he, soon after,
departs to see Lancelot for a short time, promising to come
Et le roy le luy donne | “mais vous
reuiendrez,” fait il, “incontinent;” et gallehault le luy octroye
| si senreuient a son compaignon & luy demande comment il
a depuis fait | et il luy respondit que bien; “Sire,” fait
gallehault, “comment feray ie |: le roy ma moult prie que ie
retourne a luy, & il me feroit mal de vous laisser en ce
point.” Lancelot tells Galiot to do as he wishes, for the
“Haa, sire cheualier, pour dieu
mercy, vous ferez ce que monseigneur le roy voudra. car
iamais a plus preudhomme que il est ne eustes accointance.
Mais ie vueil que vous me donnez vng don.” Et gallehault
luy dist. He charges Galiot again not to ask his name, but
“Demandez ce
quil vous plaira | car ie ne vous escondiroye iamais;” “Sire,”
fait il, “ie vous remercy. Vous me auez donne que vous ne
me demanderez mon nom deuant que ie le vous diray.” “Et
ie men tiendray a tant puis que vous le voulez,” dit
gallehault. “Et ne doubtez pas que ce eust este la premiere
chose que ie vous eusse demande, si men tairay a tant.” Lors
luy demanda de lacointance du roy artus | mais il ne
nomme mie la royne | et gallehault dit que “le roy est moult

preudhomme, & moult me poyse que ie ne lay congneu
pieca | Car moult en feusse amende | ~~mais ma dame la roye~~
est sy vaillante que oncques plus honneste dame ne vey.” et
quant le cheualier ouyt parler de la roye, si se embronche et
commence a souspirer durement. ~~et gallehault le regarde et~~
se esmerueille moult pource ~~que les larmes luy cheoyent des~~
yeulx, si commence a parler daultre chose.

Q Vant ilz ont longuement parle ensemble, le cheualier
noir luy dist. Lancelot asks Galiot to return to Arthur, and to report to him
~~z il si ferez a mon~~ seigneur le roy compaignie, et si escoutez sy
vouz orrez de moy nulles parolles, & vous me compterez
demain ce que vous aurez ouy.” “Voulentiers, sire,” faict
gallehault | lors le accolle, et dit aux roys. “Je vous baille en
garde cest homme comme le cueur de mon ventre.” Ainsi
sen va gallehault & le cheuallier demeure en la garde de
deux preu[d]hommes du pays de Gallehault | mais il ne fault
mye demander sil fust honnore | car len faisoit assez plus
pour luy quil neust voulu. Lancelot sleeps with the two kings in
~~garde de~~ la deux roys au tref gallehault pour lamour du
cheualier & luy firent entendant quilz ny coucheroyent mye |
& ilz le firent coucher ainsi que Gallehault auoit fait lautre
nuyt. but awakes at midnight, and commencing dormit le
cheualier moult fort, et quant vint a mynuit si commenca a
soy tourner, et commenca a faire vng dueil si grant que tous
ceulz qui entour luy estoyent sen esueillerent. Et en son
refrain disoit souuent. “Haa chetif, que pourray ie faire?” Et
toute nuyt demena tel deuil. Au matin se leuerent les deux
roys le plus coyement quilz peurent | & moult se merueillent
quil pouoit auoir. Galiot daultre part fut gallehault leue, &
vint a son tref veoir son compaignon. Il demande aux deux
roys que son compaignon fait. Et ilz luy dient quil auoit
toute nuyt mene grant dueil. Lors entre en la chambre ou il
estoit, et si tost comme il le ouyt venir il essuye ses yeulx;
Adonc gallehault, cuidant que il dormist, saillist dehors de la
chambre incontinent; apres le cheualier se leua. finds him with

gallehault vit que il auoit les yeulx rouges et enflez. Adonc le
 prent par la main, et le tyre a part, et luy dist. “Beau doulx
 compaignon, *pourquoy* vous occiez vous ainsi? dont vous
 vient ce dueil que vous auez toute nuyt demene, & le
 desplaisir que vous auez? and conjures him to tell him what the
~~mon~~ dieu que vous me diez la cause, et ie vous ayderay se
 nul homme mortel y peult conseil mettre; & ~~commence~~ *commence* a
 plourer si durement comme sil veist mort la chose du monde
 que mieulx aymast. Lors est gallehault moult a malayse et
 luy dit, “Beau doulx compaignon, dictes moy vostre
 mescheance | car il nest nul homme au monde, sil vous auoit
 riens forfait, que ie nen pourchassasse vostre droit.” Et il dist
 que nul ne luy a riens meffait. “beau doulx amy, *pourquoy*
 menez vous doncques si grant dueil? Vous poise il que ie
 vous ay fait mon maistre & mon compaignon?” and says that
 it is his heart, which has all the dread that it is possible for the heart to
 “Haa” fait il, “vous
 auez assez plus fait pour moy que ie ne pourroye desseruir,
 ne riens du monde ne me met a malaise que mon cueur, qui
 a toute paour que cueur mortel pourrait auoir. Si doubte
 moult que vostre grant debonnairete ne me occie.” De ceste
 chose est gallehault moult a malayse, si reconforte son
 compaignon. ~~Après allerent ou mass.~~ and Lancelot declares his belief
 that the ~~Body of Christ~~ *Body of Christ* eut fait trois parties du corps
 de nostre seigneur, gallehault se trait auant, et tient son
 compaignon par la main, & luy monstre le corps de nostre
 seigneur que le prestre tenoit entre ses mains; Puis luy dist.
 “doncques ne croyez vous pas bien que cest le corps de
 nostre saulueur?” “Voirement le croy ie bien,” fait le
 cheualier. Et gallehault luy dist. “beau doulx amy, or ne me
 mescreez mye que ces trois parties de chair que ie vois en
 semblance de pain, ia ne feray en ma vie chose *que* ie cuyde
 qui vous ennuye: mais toutes les choses que ie scauray qui
 vous plairont, pourchasseray a mon pouoir.” “sire,” fait il,
 “grant mercys.” After Mass, Lancelot bids ~~Adant se taisent luyques~~
 apres la messe | et lors demanda gallehault a son
 compaignon quil fera; “Sire,” fait il, “vous ne laisserez mie
 le roy en ce point | ains yrez luy faire compaignie.” “Sire,”

faict il, “grant mercys;” A tant sen part de luy, si le rebaille
aux preudhommes de la court du roy artus. si font de luy
grant signeurie sicomme ilz peuvent.

ET quant vint apres disner, After dinner the King and Queen
visit Gawain, and he asks Galiot who made peace between the king & the
royne & gallehault appuyez au lict de messire gauuain, tant
que messire gauuain dist a gallehault. “Sire, or ne vous poise
dune chose que ie vous demanderay.” “Certes,” fait
galehault, “non fera il.” “sire, celle paix qui fut entre vous &
mon oncle, par qui fut elle, par la chose au monde qui plus
vous aymez?” “A knight,” says Galiot. “But when knight talks of love.
me auez tant coniore que ie le vous diray. Vng cheualier la
fist.” “Et qui est le cheualier?” fait messire gauuain. “Si
maist dieu,” fait gallehault, “ie ne scay.” “Qui fut celluy aux
noires armes?” deist messire gauuain. “Ce fut,” fait il, “vng
cheualier;” “Tant,” fait il, “en pouez vous bien dire | mais
acquitter vous conuient.” “Je me suis acquite de ce que me
conjurastes. Ne plus ne vous en diray ores | ne rien ne vous
en eusse ores dit, se vous ne me eussiez coniore.” “The Black
Knight,” answers the Queen, “how fairs it?” “Par dieu,” fait la royne, “ce fut le cheuallier
noir | mais faictes le nous monstre.” “Qui | moy, dame?”
faict gallehault, “ie le vous puys bien monstre sicomme
celluy qui riens nen scait!” “Taisez vous,” fait la royne, “il
est demoure avec vous, & hier porta voz armes.” “I cannot,”
says Galiot; “he dares not say so.” “Dame,” fait il, “il est vray | mais ie ne le vys
oncques puis que ie party du roy a la premiere fois.”
“comment,” fait le roy, “ne le cognoissiez vous mye | ie
cuydoie que il fust de vostre terre.” “Si maist dieu, non est,”
fait gallehault. “certes,” fait le roy, “ne de la myenne non est
il mye.” | and Galiot will not. **Moult tinrent longuement**
gallehault a parolle le roy et la royne pour auoir le nom du
cheualier | mais plus nen peurent traire. et messire gauuain
craint quil ne ennuye a gallehault, si dist au roy. “Or en
laissez a tant le parler. certes le cheualier est preudhomme,
& pleust a dieu que ie luy ressemblasse.” Moult loe messire

gauvain le cheualier. Si en ont la parolle lisee | et
 gallehault la recommence et dit. but asks Arthur if he ever saw a
 better knight, and what he would give for it “Sire, veistes vous oncques
 meilleur cheualier que celluy au noir escu?” “certes,” fait le
 roy, “ie ne vy oncques cheualier de qui ie aymasse mieulx
 laccointance pour cheualerie;” “Non,” | fait gallehault. “Or
 me dictes,” faict gallehault, “par la foy que vous deuez a ma
 dame qui cy est, combien vous voudriez auoir donne pour
 auoir son accointance a tousioursmais?” “Half of all I have,
 except my wife, I would give it.” “Si maist dieu,” faict il, “ie luy partiroye la moytie de tout
 ce que ie pourroye auoir, fors seulement de ceste dame.”
 “Certes,” fait gallehault, “assez y mettriez. “And what would
 you, messire gauvain, se dieu vous doint sante que tant
 desirez, quel meschief en feriez vous pour auoir compaignie
 a si preudhomme?” Et quant messire gauvain lot, si pense
 vng petit comme celluy qui ne cuyde iamais auoir sante. “I
 should like to turn woman if he would do so.” “Se dieu me donnoit la sante que ie
 desire | ie voudroye orendroit estre vne des plus belles
 dames du monde, par conuenant quil me aymast tous les
 iours de sa vie.” “par ma foy,” fait gallehault, “assez y auez
 mis.” “Et vous, madame, quel meschef feriez vous par
 conuenant que vng tel cheualier fust tousiours en vostre
 service?” “I can offer no more than I can.” “par dieu,” fait elle, “messire
 gauvain y a mis toutes les offres que dame y peult mettre.”
 Et monseigneur gauvain & tous aultres se commencerent a
 rire. “Gallehault,” fait messire gauvain, “qui tous nous auez
 adiurez par le serment que ie vous coniu-ray, ores qui
 voudriez vous y auoir mys?” “Well,” says Galiot, “I would turn all
 my honour into a woman if I could.” “Si maist dieu,” faict gallehault, “ie y voudroye
 auoir tourne mon honneur a honte, par tel si que ieusse a
 tousioursmais vng si bon cheualier en ma compaignie.” “Sy
 maist dieu,” faict messire gauvain, “plus y auez mys que
 nous.” So Gawain concludes that it was the Black Knight who brought
 about the peace. Et pensa messire gauvain que cestoit le noir cheualier qui le
 paix auoit faicte | car pour luy auoit tourne son honneur a
 honte, quant il veit quil estoyt au dessus. Et le dist gauvain a
 la royne, & se fut la cause dont gallehault fut plus prise;

Moult tindrent longuement parolles du cheualier. The Queen walks away with Galiot, tells him she loves him much, and prays him to let her ~~royne address~~ ~~royne address~~ et dist quelle sen vouloit aller vers la bretesche pour veoir les prez, et gallehault la conuoye: si le print la royne par la main & luy dist. “Gallehault, ie vous ayme moult, & il est vray que vous auez le cheualier en vostre baillie, & par aduenture il est tel que ie le congnois bien; si vous prie si cher que vous auez mamour, que vous faciez tant que ie le voye.” “Dame,” fait gallehault, “ie nen ay encores nulle saisine | & ne le vy puis que la paix fut faicte de moy & du roy. He promise to be in your custody and get him out of my tref, si y conuiendrait il aultre volente que le vostre & que la mienne. Et bien saichez que tant me auez coniuire que ie mettray tout le pouoir que ie pourray. comment vous pourrez parler a luy?” and the Queen says, “I shall be in your custody, & serve you as much as I can,” fait elle, “ie le verray bien, & ie men attens a vous, et faictes tant que ie soye vostre a tousiours: car cest vng des hommes du monde que ie verroye plus volentiers.” “Dame,” fait il, “ie en feray mon pouoir.” “Grant mercys,” fait elle. for he is in your custody and get him out of my tref, si y conuiendrait il aultre volente que le vostre & que la mienne. Et bien saichez que tant me auez coniuire que ie mettray tout le pouoir que ie pourray. comment vous pourrez parler a luy?” and the Queen says, “I shall be in your custody, & serve you as much as I can,” fait elle. Or gardez que ie le voye au plus tost que vous pourrez | car il est en vostre baillie, ie le scay bien | et se il est en vostre terre, enuoyez le querre.” Atant sen part gallehault & sen vient au roy. Arthur wishes Galiot’s people and his own to be brought together. Et monseigneur gaulvain & le roy lui dient. “gallehault, ie suis deliure de mes gens, ores faictes approcher voz gens des nostres, ou ie feray approcher les nostres des vostres | Car nous sommes a priuee mesgnie.” “Sire,” faict gallehault, “ie feray approcher les miens daultre part de cest riuere si que mon tref sera endroit le vostre, et sera vne nef appareillee en quoy nous passerons dicy la et de la icy.” “Certes,” fait le roy, “moult auez bien dit.”

L Ors sen va Gallehault en sa tente, et trouue son Lancelot, compaignon moult pensif. Il luy demande comment il a puis fait; Et il dist, “bien, se paour ne me mestriast.” et gallehault dist, “de quoy auez vous telle paour?” “que ie ne soye

congneu,” dist il. “or nen ayez mie paour, car vous ny serez
 ia congneu, se vostre volente ne y est;” tells him what the King,
 Gawain, and the Queen have made of the offers que le roy et messire
 gauvain ont faict pour luy, et ce que la royne dit | et
 comment la royne la tenu a grant parlement de le veoir | et
 comme il luy respondit. “et saichez que elle na de nully si
 tres grant desir de veoir comme de vous. Et monseigneur la
 Roy ma pryre que ie face mes gens approcher | car nous
 sommes trop loing lung de lautre. and asks him what answer he
 shall give you. “adictes que vous voulez que je face | car il est en vostre
 plaisir.” “Je loue que vous facez ce que monseigneur le roy
 vous pryre;” “Et a ma dame que respondray ie, beau doulx
 amy?” “Certes,” fait il, “ie ne scay.” Lors commence a
 souffler haut luy disant. “Beau doulx amy, ne vous
 esmavez point | mais dictes moy comment vous voulez quil
 soit | car bien saichez quil sera ainsi comme vous vouldrez |
 et ie aymeroye mieulx estre courrouce a la moytie du monde
 que a vous tout seul. ores me dictes quil vous en plaist.”

and says to him, faire le dit cheualier, “ce que vous me louerez |
 car ie suis en vostre garde desormais.” “There will be no harm in
 “Certes,” fait gallehault, “il me semble que pour veoir ma
 dame la royne il ne vous peult empyrer.” Lancelot says the
 matter must be managed secretly; and they agree that Galiot shall tell the Queen
 he has seen her. Lors aperceut gallehault assez de son penser, & le tient
 si court quil luy octroye ce quil demande | “mais il
 conuiendra,” fait il, “que il soyt faict celeement, que nul ne
 le saiche | fors moy et vous.” Et gallehault dit que il ne se
 soulcye point. “Or dictes,” (fait le cheualier a gallehault,)
 “a ma dame que vous me auez enuoye querre.” “Sur moy en
 laissez le surplus,” dit Gallehault. Lors sen part a tant, et
 commanda ses trefz a tendre la ou il auoit en conuenant au
 roy | et son seneschal fist son commandement.

How Guinevere and
 Lancelot meet and talk.

¶ Comment gallehault fist tant que la royne veit
 Lancelot, Et comment ilz se araisonnerent
 ensemble, et parlerent de plusieurs choses.

A Tant sen partit gallehault The Queen asks Galiot what he
 wanted of the
 leant au rechief du roy, & si tost comme la royne le voit, si luy
 courut a lencontre, & luy demande comment il auoit
 employcte la besongne. “dame,” faict il, “ie en ay fait tant
 que ie craing que lamour de vostre pryere ne me tolle la
 chose du monde que ie ayme plus.” “Sy maist dieu,” faict
 elle, “vous ne perderez riens par moy que ie ne vous rende
 ou double | mais que y puez vous,” fait elle, “perdre?”
 “Celluy mesmes que vous demandez,” fait gallehault | “Car
 ie doubte quil ne se courrouce, et que ie ne le perde a
 tousiours.” “Certes,” faict elle, “ce ne pourray ie pas rendre |
 mais ia par moy ne le perderez, se dieu plaist. Et touteffoys
 dictes moy quant il viendra” | “Sent to seek for my knight,” says he.
 “quant il pourra | car ie lay enuoye querre, et croy que il ne
 demourra mye longuement.” De leur conseil entendit ung
 peu la dame de mallehault qui sen prenoit garde et nen
 faisoit mye semblant. Lors sen partit gallehault et vient a ses
 gens qui estoyent logez la ou il auoit commande.

Q Vant il fut descendu, and tells his Seneschal to bring
 Lancelot to the
 il parla a son Seneschal et luy deist | “quant ie vous
 enuoyeray querir, venez a moy, vous & mon compaignon en
 ce lieu la.” Et le roy des cent cheualiers, qui son seneschal
 estoit, dist que moult volentiers feroit son commandement
 & son plaisir. Galiot then goes back to the Queen, says he thinks she will
 see her knight that evening, and appoints to meet him.
 Lors salua Gallehault son
 compaignon, et sen retourna a la court. Et quant la royne
 veit gallehault qui estoit venu, elle luy dist que il gardast
 bien et loyaulment ce quil luy auoit promis. Et il luy dist |
 “dame, ie cuyde que vous verrez ennuyt ce que vous auez
 tant desire.” Quant elle ouyt ce, si en fut moult ioieuse, et
 moult luy ennuya ce iour pour sa voulente acomplir du desir
 que elle auoit de parler a celuy ou toutes ses pensees
 estoyent. Lors luy deist Gallehault, “nous yrons apres
 soupper en ce vergier la aual” | et elle luy octroye. After

supper the ~~Quant ce vint apres souper,~~ si appelle la royne | la
 dame de mallehault | et dame Lore de cardueil, une sienne
 pucelle, et sen vont tout droit la ou gallehault auoyt dit | et
 gallehault prent ung escuyer et luy dist. ~~and Galiot sends for his~~
~~Va et dy a mon seneschal~~ que il viengne la ou ie luy
 commanday.” Et ~~Alors ne demoura guaires~~ que le
 seneschal y vint, luy et le cheualier. Ilz estoyent tous deux
 de grant beaulte; Quant ilz approcherent, si congneut la
 dame de mallehault le cheualier comme celluy que elle
 auoyt eu maint iour en sa baillie. Et pource quelle ne vouloit
 mye que il la congneut, se embroncha, et ilz passent oultre.
 le seneschal les salue. Et gallehault dit a la royne. “Dame,
 lequel vous semble il que se soit?” | et elle dit. ~~The Queen at~~
~~first cannot think that either of the knights~~ “Certes, ilz sont tous deux beaulx cheualliers
 | mais ie ne voy corps ou il puisse auoir tant de prouesse que
 le noir cheualier auoit.” “or saichez, dame, que cest lung de
 ces deux” | a tant sont venuz auant, et le cheuallier tremble
 si que a peine peult saluer la royne, & la royne sen
 esmerueille. ~~but one is so bashful that he cannot~~ lors se agenouillent eulx deux, et
 le cheualier la salue | mais cest moult pourement | car moult
 estoit honteux. Lors se pense la royne que cest il. Et
 gallehault dit au seneschal. “allez, si faictes a ces dames
 compaignie.” Et celluy fait ce que son sire luy commande.
~~seats him by her, smiles on him, says she~~ ~~And doncques la royne~~ prent le
 cheualier par la main & le assiet iouxte elle. Sy luy fait
 moult beau semblant & dit en riant. ~~and now he must tell her who~~
~~he is.~~ “Sire, moult vous auons desire, tant que, dieu mercy et
 gallehault, vous voyons. et nonpourtant encores ne croy ie
 mye que ce soit celluy que ie demande | & gallehault ma dit
 que cestes vous | & encores vouldroye scauoir qui vous estes
 par vostre bouche mesmes, se vostre plaisir y estoit.” Et
 celui dit que il ne scait | et oncques ne la regarda au visaige.
 Et la royne ce esmerueille que il peult auoir, tant quelle
 souspeconne une partie de ce quil a. Et gallehault, qui le
 voigt si honteux, ~~Galiot le pense quil vult dire,~~ a la royne son
 penser seul a seul. lors sen vient messire gauvain celle part,
 et fait rasseoir les damoyselles pour ce que leuees sestoient

encontre luy. Puis commencent a parler de maintes choses.

and the Queen asks the knight, "Are not you he who wore the black armour, and the Royne dit au cheualier, "Beau sire, pourquoy vous celez vous de moy? Certes il ne y a cause pourquoy; nestes vous mie celluy qui porta les noires armes, et qui vainquist lassemblee?" "Dame, nenny" | "et nestes vous pas celluy qui porta lendemain les armes a gallehault?" "Dame, ouy;" "Donc estes vous celluy qui vainquistes lassemblee qui fut faicte le premier iour par deuers nous et par ⁴² deuers Gallehault?" "Dame, non suis." Quant la royne ot ainsi parler le cheualier, a donc appercoit elle bien quil ne veult mie congnoistre quil eust vaincue lassemblee, si len prise mieulx la royne | car quant vng homme se loe luy mesmes, il tourne son honneur a honte | et quant aultruy le loe, adonc il est mieulx prise. "Then who made you knight, what?" "Or me dictes," fait la royne a lancelet | "qui vous fist cheualier?" "Dame," fait il, "vous;" "Moy?" fait elle, "Et quant?" "You, at Kamalot, when the pieces of a spear were drawn on me," fait il, "vous remembrez vous point quant vng cheualier vint a Kamalot, lequel estoyt naure de deux troncons de lance au corps, et dune espee parmy la teste, et que vng varlet vint a court en vng vendredy, et fut cheualier le dymenche, et deffera le cheualier?" "De ce," fait elle, "me souient il bien | et se dieu vous aist, feustes vous ce *que* la dame du lac amena en court vestu dune robe blanche?" "Dame, ouy." "Et pourquoy dictes vous donc que ie vous fis cheualier?" "Dame," fait il, "ie dys vray | Car la coustume est telle que nul ne peut estre cheualier sans ceindre espee. and you girded on my sword, thus making me knight." "Et celluy de qui il tient lespee, le faict cheualier; de vous la tiens ie. Car le roy ne la me donna onques. Pour ce dis ie que vous me feistes cheualier." De ce est la royne moult ioyeuse | "ou vous en allastes vous au partir de court?" and I went away to help the Lady of Noehault, "Dame, ie men alay. pour secourir la dame de noehault;" "Et durant ce temps me mandastes vous riens?" "Dame, ouy | ie vous enuoyay peux pucelles." "Il est vray," dist la royne. "Et quant vous partistes de noehault, trouuastes vous nul cheualier qui se reclamast de moy?"

Then I met a man, who ~~Dame, ouy, vng~~ qui gardoit vng gue, et me dist que descendisse de dessus mon cheual et le vouloit auoir, et ie luy demanday a qui il estoit | et il dist a vous. Puis luy demanday apres, qui le commandoyt. Et il me dist quil nauoyt nul commandement que le sien. Et adoncques remys le pied en lestrief et remontay | and I fought him (for ~~Car ie estoie en la desc~~ ~~Car ie estoie en la desc~~) et luy dis que il ne lauoyt point, et me combatis a luy. Et ie scay bien que ie vous fis oultrage, si vous en crie mercy” | “Certes a moy ne en feistes vous point | Car il nestoyt mye a moy | et luy sceuz mauuais gre de ce quil ce reclama de moy. Mais or me dictes on vous en allastes la?” After that I took the Sorrowful Castle, and ~~Dame, ie mon allay~~ a la douloureuse garde” | “& qui la conquist?” “Dame, ie y entray” | “et ne vous y viz ie oncques.” “Ouy, plus de troys foys.” “Et en quel temps?” fist elle. “Dame,” fist il, “vng iour que ie vous demanday se vous vouliez leans entrer; Et vous deistes ouy | et estiez moult esbahye par semblant.” “Et quel escu portiez vous?” “Dame, ie portay a la premiere foys vng escu blanc a vne bande de belif vermeille. Et lautre foys vng ou il y auoyt deux bendes” | “Et vous vys ie plus?” last when you thought you had lost Gauvain and his knights, ~~Qui la muyt que vous~~ ~~Qui la muyt que vous~~ cuidiez auoir perdu messire Gauvain et ses compaignons, et que les gens cryoyent que len me prenist; Je vins hors a tout mon escu a troys bendes.” “Certes,” faict elle, “ce poise moy | car se on vous eust detenu, tous les enchantements feussent demourez | and I helped to help him from prison, ~~Mais or me dictes~~ fustes vous ce qui iettastes messire Gauvain de prison?” “Dame, ie y ayday a mon pouoir.” “Certes,” faict elle, “en toutes les choses ~~que~~ vous me dictes ie nay trouue si non verite. The Queen asks the knight who was in the ~~Mais or me dictes~~ qui estoit en vne tournelle dessus la chambre monseigneur.” “A damsel ~~Dame, cestoyt vne~~ pucelle que ie ne villennay oncques | Car ma dame du lac la me auoyt enuoyee | si me trouua en ceste tournelle | il fut assez qui la honnora pour moy. but I asked her not to leave till she saw my messenger or me, which I then forgot, and kept ~~Quant ie ouy~~ ~~Quant ie ouy~~ long time.” nouvelles de monseigneur Gauvain, si en fut moult

angoisseux, et men party de la Damoyselle qui avecques moy debuoit venir, et luy priay que elle ne se remuast tant que elle eust mon messaige ou moy. Si fus si surprins de tresgrant affaire que ie loubliay | et elle fut plus loyalle uers moy que ie ne fus courtois vers elle | car oncques ne se remua iusques a ce *quelle* eut mes enseignes, et ce fut grant piece apres.”

How the Queen knew
Lancelot.

Comment la royne congneut Lancelot apres quil eut longuement parle a elle, et quil luy eut compte de ses aduentures. Et comment la premiere acointance fut faicte entre lancelot et la royne genieure par le moyen de gallehault.

Quant la royne eut parle de la damoiselle, When she heard of this damsel the Queen knew well that it was Lancelot. Si luy enquist de toutes les choses *quelle* auoit ouy de luy, et de toutes le trouua vray disant; “Or me dictes,” fait elle, “vous vy ie puis?” “Ouy, dame, telle heure que *vous* me eustes bien mestier | car ieusse este noye a kamalot se ne eussiez vous este.” and asks him if he was the knight whom Daguenet took. He answers “Yes;” and that two rascals killed his horse, and Comment ~~vous eustes~~ vous celluy que daguenet le fol print?” “Dame, prins fus ie sans faulte.” “Et ou alliez vous?” “Dame, ie alloye apres vng cheuallier.” “Et vous combatistes vous a luy” | “dame, ouy.” “Et dillec ou allastes vous?” “Dame, ie trouuay deux grans villains que me occirent *mon* cheual | mais messire yuain, qui bonne aduenture ayt, men donna vng.” “Ah, then your name is ~~ha,~~ *ha,*” fait elle, “ie scay bien qui vous estes; Vous auez nom lancelot du lac.” Il se taist. “Par dieu,” faict elle, “pournant le celez | long temps a que messire Gauuain apporta nouuelles de vostre nom a court;” Lors luy compta comment messire yuain auoit compte que la damoiselle auoit dit | cest la tierce. “Et anten quelles armes portastes vous?” “Vnes vermeilles.” “Par mon chef cest verite. “and for what lady or

damsel did you do such feats of arms? Et quant hier pour moy feistes
 vous tant d'armes comme vous feistes?" Et il commenca a
 souspirer. "Dictes moy seurement | Car ie scay bien que
 pour aulcune dame ou damoyselle le feistes vous, et me
 dictes qui elle est, par la foy que vous me deuez." "For you,
 Lady; and for you I broke the three lances that you, dame, brought me
 quil le me conuient dire, cestes vous." "Moy?" faict elle.
 "Voire, dame." "Pour moy ne rompistes vous pas les troys
 lances que ma pucelle vous porta?" "Car ie me mis bien hors
 du mandement, dame; ie fis pour elle ce que ie deuz, et pour
 vous ce que ie peux." "Et combien a il que vous me ayez
 tant?" "Des le iour que ie fus tenu pour cheuallier, et ie ne
 lestoye mye" | "Par la foy que vous me deuez, dont vindrent
 ces amours que vous auez en moy mises?" for you had made
 me your friend, and said I was your knight in all lands, and bid me adieu as your
 friend, et vous le me feistes faire qui de moy feistes vostre
 amy, se vostre bouche ne me a menty." "Mon amy!" faict
 elle, "comment?" "Dame," fait il, "ie vins deuant vous quant
 ie eu prins congie monseigneur le roy | si vous commanday
 a dieu, et dis que ie estoye vostre cheuallier en tous lieux. Et
 vous me dictes que vostre amy et vostre cheuallier voulliez
 vous que ie fusse. Printed as shown: inner and outer quotes both
 use double quotes, and no marks. Et vous distes "a dieu! mon
 beau doulx amy!" That word has never left me, but always been my
 at le mot qui preudhomme me fera, se ie le suis, ne oncques
 puis ne fus a si grant meschef que il ne men remembrast. Ce
 mot ma conforte en tous mes ennuy. Cest mot ma de tous
 maulx guarir. Cest mot ma fait riche en mes pouretez;" "Par
 ma foy," fait la royne, "ce mot fut en bonne heure dict | et
 dieu en soyt aoure | ne ie ne le prenroye pas acertes comme
 vous feistes, et a maint preudhomme ay ie ce dict ou ie ne
 pensay oncques riens que le dire. "Oh, but that was only an
 ordinary compliment," says the queen. Mais la custume est telle des cheualliers
 que font a mainte dame semblant de telles choses dont a
 gueres ne leur est au cueur." Et ce disoit elle pour veoir de
 combien elle le pourroit mettre en malaise; This grieves
 Lancelot so that he nearly faints, at which the ladies greatly grieve. Car elle veoit bien quil ne

pretendoit a autre amour que a la sienne | mais elle se
 delectoyt a sa malaisete veoir, et il eut si grant angoisse que
 par vng pou quil ne se pasma | & la royne eut paour quil ne
 cheist, si appella gallehault, et il y vint acourant. Quant il
 voyt *que* son compaignon est si courrouce, si en a si grant
 angoisse *que* plus ne peut. “Haa, dame,” fait gallehault,
 “vous le nous pourrez bien tollir, et ce seroit trop grand
 dommaige.” “Certes, sire, se seroit mon;” tells the Queen that
~~“Et ne scauez vous pour qui il a tant fait~~
 darmes?” faict gallehault. “Certes, nenny,” faict elle | “mais,
 se il est veoir ce qui ma este dict, cest pour moy;” “Dame, se
 maist dieu, bien len pouez croire | car aussi comme il est le
 plus preudhomme de tous les hommes | aussi est son cueur
 plus vray que tous aultres.” “Voirement,” fait elle, “diriez
 vous quil seroit preudhomme se vous scauiez quil a fait
 darmes puis quil fut cheuallier.” Lors luy compte tout ainsi
 comment vous auez ouy | “et saichez quil a ce faict
 seulement pour moy,” fait elle. Lors luy prie gallehault, &
 dist. and prays for the lady to have “Pour dieu, dame, ayez de luy mercy, et faictes
 pour moy ainsi comme ie fis pour vous quant vous men
 priastes.” “Quelle mercy voulez vous que ien aye?” “Dame,
 vous scauez que ie vous ayme sur toutes, et il a fait pour
 vous plus que oncques cheualier ne fist pour dame, et sachez
 que la paix de moy et de monseigneur neust ia este faicte se
 neust il este.” “there is nothing he can ask of me that I will not do; but he
~~ait elle,~~ “il a plus faict pour moy que ne pourroye desservir,
 ne il ne me pourroyt chose requerre dont ie le puisse
 esconduyre | mais il ne me requiert de riens | ains est tant
 melencolieux que merueilles.” “Dame,” fait gallehault,
 “auez en mercy; il est celluy qui vous ayme plus que soy
 mesmes. Si maist dieu, ie ne scauoye riens de sa volente
 quant il vint, fors quil doubtoit de estre congneu, ne oncques
 plus ne men descourrit.” “Je en auray,” fait elle, “telle
 mercy comme vous vouldrez.” “Dame, vous auez fait ce que
 ie vous ay requis; aussi doy ie bien faire ce *que* vous me
 requerez.” Se dit la royne, “il ne me requiert de riens.” “He
~~does not dare,” answers Gallo,~~ “Certes, dame,” fait gallehault, “il ne

ose | car len ne aymera ia riens par amours que len ne
 craigne | mais ie vous en prie pour luy, & se ie ne vous en
 priasse, si le deussiez vous pourchasser. Car plus riche tresor
 ne pourriez vous conquerer.” “Then I will grant it,” says Queen
 Guinevere. Galiot prays her to give Lancelot her love, and become his loyal lady
 elle, “ie le scay bien et ie en feray tout ce que vous
 commanderez.” “Dame,” fait Gallehault, “grant mercy. Je
 vous prie que vous luy donnez vostre amour, et le retenez
 pour vostre cheuallier a tousiours, et deuenez sa loyalle
 dame toute vostre vie | et vous le aurez fait plus riche que se
 vous luy auiez donne tout le monde.” “Comtes,” fait Lancelot’s,
 elle, “ie luy ottroye que il soyt mien | et moy toute sienne, et
 que par vous soyent amendez tous les meffaitz.” and that she
 will “Dame,” fait Gallehault, “grant mercy. Or conuient il
 commencement de seruice;” “Vous ne deuiserez riens,” fait
 la royne, “que ie ne face.” “Then kiss Lancelot,” fait Galiot.
 “grant mercy | donc baisez le deuant moy pour
 commencement de vrayes amours.” “Du baiser,” faict elle,
 “ie ne voy ne lieu ne temps | et ne doubtez pas,” faict elle,
 “que ie ne le voulsisse faire aussi voullentiers quil feroit |
 mais ces dames sont cy qui moult se merueillent que nous
 auons tant fait, si ne pourroyt estre que ilz ne le vissent.

This Guinevere agrees Nonpourtant, se il veult, ie le baisera
 voullentiers.” Et il en est si ioyeux que il ne peult respondre
 si non tant quil dict. “Dame,” faict il, “grant mercy” | Galiot
 says there is no doubt, fait Gallehault, “de son vouloir nen
 doubtez ia | Car il est tout vostre, bien le saichez, ne ia nul
 ne sen apperceuera; Nous troys serons ensemble ainsi
 comme se nous conseillions” | “Dequoy me feroye ie pryer”
 | faict elle | “plus le vueil ie que vous.” Lors se trayent a
 part, et font semblant de conseiller. and as he is bashful, the Queen
 takes him by the chin, and kisses him before Galiot. (The Lady of Mallehault
 se que le cheuallier nen ose plus faire, si le prent par le
 menton, et baise deuant Gallehault assez longuement. Et la
 dame de Mallehaulti (sic) sceut de vray que elle le baisoyt.
 Lors parla la Royne qui moult estoyt sage & vaillant dame.

Guinevere tells Lancelot that she is his, but charges him to keep the matter secret,
 amy,” faict elle, “tant auez faict que ie suys vostre; Et moult

en ay grant ioye. Or gardez que la chose soyt celee. Car mestier en est. Je suys une des Dames du monde dont len a greigneur bien dict, Et se ma renommee empiroyt par vous, il y auroyt layde amour et vilaines, Gallehault, ie vous pryé que mon honneur gardez | Car vous estes le plus saige | Et se mal men venoyt, ce ne seroyt si non par vous; Et se ien ay bien et ioye, vous me lauez donnee Dame, fait Gallehault, “il ne pourroyt vers vous mesprendre, et ien ay bien faict ce que vous me commandastes. Or vous pryé que faciez ma volente ainsi comme iay fait la vostre;” “Dictes,” fait elle, “tout ce quil vous plaira hardyement | car vous ne me scauriez chose commander que ie ne face.” and asks Guinevere to make Lancelot her companion for ever. “Dame,” fait il, “donc mauez vous ottroye que ie seray son compaignon a tousiours.” “Certes,” fait elle, “se de ce vous failloit, vous auriez mal employe la peine que vous auez prinse pour luy et pour moy.” She takes Lancelot’s hors, prend le cheualier par la main, et dict. “Gallehault, ie vous donne ce cheualier a tousiours sans ce que iay auant eu, et vous le me creancez ainsi” | et aussi le cheualier luy creance | and says she has given him Lancelot of the lake, King ban. elle, “Gallehault, que ie vous ay donne lancelot du lac, le filz au roy ban de benoic;” Ainsi luy a fait le cheualier congnoistre, qui moult en a grant honte. This gives Galiot more joy than ever he had before, as he had often heard how Lancelot was the gallantest knight in the world. Lors a gallehault greigneure ioye quil neust oncques | car il auoit maintesfois ouy dire, comme parolles vont, que cestoyt le meilleur cheualier et le plus preux du monde, et bien scauoit que le roy ban auoit este moult gentil homme, et moult puissant de amys et de terre.

Ainsi fut faicte la premiere acointance de la royne et de lancelot par gallehault | et Gallehault ne lauoit oncques congneu que de veue, et pource luy fait creancer quil ne luy demanderoit son nom tant quil luy dist, ou autre pour luy. Lors se leuerent tous troys, et il anuytoit durement. By the bright moonlight they recross the meadow and find the king, si

faisoit cler | Si que elle luysoyt par toute la prairie | Lors sen retournerent a vne part contrement les prez droit vers le tref le cheualier, & le seneschal et gallehault vint apres luy & les dames tant quilz vindrent endroit les tentes de gallehault.

and Galiot sends Lancelot there, while he conducts ~~Lancelot~~ ^{Lancelot} ~~to~~ ^{to} ~~Arthur's tent,~~ ^{Arthur's tent,}
Gallehault son compaignon a son tref, et prent conge de la royne, et gallehault la conuoya iusques au tref du Roy. Et quant le roy les veyt, si demanda dont ilz venoyent. and tells him they have only been looking ~~at the field~~ ^{at the field} ~~by the~~ ^{by the} ~~chapel~~ ^{chapel},
“Sire,” fait Gallehault, “nous uenons de veoir ces pres a si peu de compaignie comment vous veez.” Lors se assient, et parlent de plusieurs choses; si sont la Royne et Gallehault moult ayses.

AV chef de piece se leua la royne, et sen alla en la bretesche; gallehault la conuoya iusques la. Galiot sees the ~~commander~~ ^{commander},
dieu, et dist quil sen yroit gesir avec son compaignon. “Bien auez fait,” dit la royne, “il en sera plus ayse” | A tant sen part gallehault, et vient au roy prendre congie, et dist quil ne luy desplaise, et que il yra gesir avec les gens pource quil ny auoyt geu de grant piece, et dist.
and then takes leave ~~of the king and the queen~~ ^{of the king and the queen},
“Sire, ie me doi bz pen-
voulente | car ilz me ayment moult.” “Sire,” fait messire gauvain, “vous dictes bien, et len doit bien honnorer telz preudhommes qui les a.” Lors sen part gallehault et vient a son compaignon; ~~Ilz se couchent tous deux en vng lict, et~~ ^{Ilz se couchent tous deux en vng lict, et}
deviserent la une piece. Si nous laisserons ores a parler de gallehault & de son compaignon, et dirons de la royne qui est venu en la bretesche.

QVant gallehault fut party, Queen Guinevere goes to the ~~sen~~ ^{sen} ~~alla~~ ^{alla} ~~en~~ ^{en} ~~la~~ ^{la} ~~royne~~ ^{royne} fenestre, et commence a penser a ce que plus luy plaisoyt. La dame de mallehault saprocha delle quant elle la vit seulle, et luy dist le plus priueement que elle peut. and the Lady of Mallehault asks her ~~why~~ ^{why} ~~she~~ ^{she} ~~is~~ ^{is} ~~so~~ ^{so} ~~good~~ ^{good} ~~at~~ ^{at} ~~company~~ ^{company} ~~of~~ ^{of} ~~four~~ ^{four} ~~?”~~ ^{?”}
“Ha, dame! pourquoy ne est bonne la compaignie de quatre?” At first Guinevere will not

hear this, but the Lady repeats it; the Queen asks why she says it, and the Lady asks pardon, as per the original. ~~La royne ne le ouyst bien, si ne dit mot, et fait semblant que riens nen ouyt. Et ne demoura gueres que la dame dist celle parolle mesmes; la royne lapella et dist.~~

“Dame, pourquoy auez ce dit?” “Dame,” fait elle, “pardonnez moi, ie nen diray ores plus | car par aduenture en ay plus dit que a moy napartient | & len ne se doit mi faire plus priuee de sa dame que len est | car tost en acquiert on hayne.” ~~“Si mais dieu,” fait la royne, “vous ne me pourriez riens dire dont vous eussiez ma haine | ie vous tiens tant a saige et a courtoyse, que vous ne diriez riens qui fust encontre ma voulente | “Mais dites hardement | Car ie le vueil, et si vous en prie.”~~ “Then I must say that I think four very good company. I saw the new acquaintance you made to-day, and know he is the man who loved me, and I thought then that he loved me, but he hath deceived me.”

“Dame,” fait elle, “donc le vous diray ie | Je dy que moult est bonne la compaignie de quatre; Jay huy veu nouveau accointement que vous auez faict au cheuallier qui parla a vous la bas en ce vergier. Et scay bien que cest la personne du monde qui plus vous ayme, et vous ne auez pas tort se vous laymez | car vous ne pourriez vostre amour mieulx employer;” “Comment,” fait la royne, “le congnoissez vous?” I kept him a year and a half in prison, and gave him both the red and the black arms in which he was arrayed.

“Dame,” fait elle, “telle heure a este ouen que ie vous en eusse bien peu faire refus comme vous en pouez ores faire a moy | car ie lay tenu vng an et demy en prison. Cest celluy qui vainquit lassemblee aux armes vermeilles | & celle de deuant hier aux armes noires, les vnes & les autres luy baillay ie; Et quant il fut auant hier sur la riuiere pensif, et ie luy voulu mander que il fist vaillamment armes, ie ne le faisoye sinon pour ce que ie esperoye quil vous aymast; si cuydoye telle heure fust que il me aymast | and I thought then that he loved me, but he hath deceived me.”

tost hors de cuyder, tant me descouurit de son penser.” Lors luy compta comment elle lauoyt tenu en prison an et demy | et pourquoy elle lauoit prins. The Queen answers, “But tell me why

four are better company than three.” “Or me dites,” fait la royne, “quelle compaignie vault mieulx de quatre que de troys | car mieulx est vne chose celee par trois que par quatre.” “Certes non est cy

endroit, et si vous diray. “Because, though your knight loves you, he
 loves Galiot too, and he is the one that loves you. Vray est que le cheualier vous ayme, et aussi fait
 il gallehault, et desormais se conforteront lung lautre en
 quelque terre quilz soient. Car icy ne seront ilz pas
 longuement: et vous demourerez cy toute seule, et ne le
 scaura nul fors vous | long, but you will; and if you have no one else to
 tell your thought to, you will be forced to keep your faith to yourself; but if you
 will let me be a fourth, we can ne fairez a qui descourir vostre
 pensee, si porterez ainsi vostre faix toute seulle | mais sil
 vous pleust que ie fusse la quarte en la compaignie entre
 nous deux dames, nous solacierons ainsi comme entre eulx
 deux cheualiers feront, si en seriez plus aise.” “Scauez
 vous,” fait la royne, “qui est le cheuallier?” “Se maist dieu,”
 fait la dame, “nenny.” “Vous auez bien ouy comment il se
 couurit vers moy.” Queen Guinevere “Certes,” fait la royne,
 “moult estes apparceunte, et moult conuiendroit estre sage
 qui vous vouldroit rien embler, & puis que ainsi est que vous
 lauez aperceu, et que vous me requerez la compaignie, vous
 laurez | mais ie vueil que vous portez vostre faix ainsi
 comme ie feray le mien.” “Dame,” faict elle, “ie feray ce que
 il vous plaira, pour ci haulte compaignie auoir.” “En verite,”
 faict la royne, “vous laurez | car meilleure compaignie que
 vous ne pourroye ie mye auoir,” “Dame,” fait elle, “nous
 serons ensemble toutes les heures quil vous plaira.” “Jen
 suys ioyeuse,” faict la Royne. “Et nous affermerons demain
 la compaignie de nous quatre.” and tells the Lady that the knight is
 luy raconte de Lancelot, comment il auoyt ploure quant il
 regarda deuers elle, “et ie scay que il vous congneut, et
 saichez que cest lancelet du lac, le meilleur cheuallier qui
 viue.” Ainsi parlerent longuement entre elles deux | et font
 moult grant ioye de leur accointement nouueau. At night the
 lady ne souffrit oncques la Royne de logres que la dame
 de mallehault geust sinon avec elle | mais elle y geut a force.
 Car elle doubtoyt moult de gesir avec si riche dame; and talk
 elles furent couchées si commencerent a parler de leurs
 nouvelles amours; La royne demanda a la dame de
 mallehault selle a[y]me nulluy par amours, et elle luy dict

que nenny. the Lady of Mallehault saying that she never loved but one, and then only in thought. “Sachez, dame, que ie naymay oncques que vne foy, ne de celle amour ne fis ie que penser;” et ce dit elle deancelot, quelle auoit tant ayme comme femme pourroit aymer homme mortel | Mais elle nen auoit oncques aultre ioye eue, non pourtant ne dit pas que ce eust il este.

The Queen thinks she will make the Lady and Galiot fall in love with another. La royne pensa quelle feroit ses amours de elle et de gallehault, mais elle nen veult parler iusques a tant quelle scaura de gallehault sil la veult aymer ou non | car autrement ne len requerroit elle pas. Next morning they go to Arthur’s tent and wake him, and then return. Le lendemain matin elles deux, & allerent au tref du roy, qui gisoit la pour faire a monseigneur gauvain et aux aultres cheualiers compaignie. La royne sesueilla, & dist, “que moult estoyt mauuais qui a ceste heure dormoyt.” Lors se tournerent contreual les prez, et dames et damoyselles avec elles. where the meeting with Lancelot took place, and the Queen tells the Lady of Mallehault all about it, and then praises Galiot as the wisest and best knight in the world. Le lendemain l’acointement damours auoyt este faict, et dict la Royne a la dame de mallehault toute l’acointance deancelot | et comme il estoit esbahy deuant elle, et riens ne luy laissa a dire. Puis commença a louer gallehault, et dit que cestoit le plus saige homme et le plus vertueulx du monde; “Certes,” fait elle, “ie luy compteray l’acointance de nous deux quant il viendra, et sachez que il en aura grant ioye. Or allons | car il ne demourra gueres quil ne viengne.”

The rubric of the next chapter is as follows:

How Galiot became acquainted with the Lady of Melyhalt.

¶ Comment la premiere acointance fut faicte de gallehault et de la dame de malehault par le moyen de la royne de logres. Et commentancelot & gallehault sen alloient esbatre et deuiser avec leurs dames.

It relates how Queen Guinevere requires Galiot to let her dispose of his love as

he had disposed of hers. To this he consents, and she commends him to the Lady of Mallehault. Next, they arrange for the promised *parlement de eulx quatre*; and the queen points out to Lancelot the lady who had so many a day kept him in prison, i.e., the Lady of Mallehault. At recognizing his old acquaintance, Lancelot feels somewhat distressed, but is reassured by observing the new love-making between her and Galiot. Seated in a wood, the four “demourerent grant piece, ne oncques ne tindrent parolles, fors tant seullement de accoller & de baiser comme ceulx qui voulientiers le faisoient.”

We next hear of Gawain's recovery, and of the separation of the party of four above spoken of. Galiot takes Lancelot home with him to his own country, whilst the Lady of Mallehault remains for a time with the queen and Arthur. When Lancelot is next spoken of, he is in Galiot's country, where we will now leave him.

NOTES TO THE APPENDIX.

[P. xxiii.](#) *Descosse* = *d'Écosse*, of Scotland. In Old French, words are frequently run together; thus we have *labbaye* for *l'abbaye*, *sesmeurent* for *s'émeurent*, etc. Also the letter *s* is often replaced in modern French by an acute or circumflex accent; so that *Escosse* = *Êcosse*; *chasteau* = *château*, etc.

The word *si* often occurs below with a great variety of meanings, viz. I, he; and, also; so, thus; etc.

[P. xxiv.](#) *baille*, given, entrusted.

brouyr (*brûler*), being burnt.

monstier, monastery.

gauues, so in the original throughout; *gaunes* is used in other romances.

[P. xxv.](#) *auèques* = *avec*, with.

[P. xxvi.](#) *aduisión*, vision.

behourdys, tournament.

naure, wounded.

deffera = *desferra*, un-ironed; it means that Lancelot drew the weapons out of the knight's wounds.

deuers, "Préposition relative au temps et au lieu dont on parle; près, vers, contre, proche; de versus." Roquefort.

octroya, permitted (authorized).

mouille, lit. wetted; insulted.

[P. xxvii.](#) *veirent*, saw.

escript (*écrit*), written.

lassemblee, the gathering; i.e. the war, strife.

rua, overthrew.

[P. xxviii.](#) *mire*, physician.

gue, ford, pass.

tresues, a truce; spelt *treues* on p. xxix.

[P. xxix.](#) *esbatre*, to divert oneself. In modern French, *s'ébattre*.

[P. xxx.](#) *orrions*, shall hear.

deust = *dût*.

cheoient, from *cheoir*, to fall. Compare *chûte*.

poilz, hairs.

esbahy, amazed.

ortelz, toes.

chaille; from *chaloir*, to be anxious about.

dilacion, delay.

[P. xxxi.](#) *paour*, fear.

mire, physician.

veufue, old.

[P. xxxii.](#) *cheuauche*, rides.

boutte, buts, pushes.

iecte (*jeté*), cast.

cuyde, I believe.

Si maist dieu, so God aid me. Here *maist* is put for *m'aist*.

oncques, ever.

ennuyt, this night, to-night.

lottroyera, will grant him his request.

conroy, troops.

[P. xxxiii.](#) *derrains* (*derniers*), last.

busines, trumpets.

Or y perra, now it will appear.

cuidoit, believed; from the old verb *quider*.

cheuauchent, ride.

ia, already.

tertre, a small hill.

[P. xxxiv.](#) *adresse*, a cross-path.

huy, just before; *lit.* this day. Lat. *hodiè*.

se pasme, swoons.

leans, thither.

[P. xxxv.](#) *ores*, now.

huy, to-day.

preudhomme, a wise and prudent man.

lottroye, permits him.

tref, tent.

nenny, no!

ains, before.

guerpiront, will leave.

deduys, amusements, diversions.

[P. xxxvi.](#) *leans*, there.

gerrez, will lie.

las, tired.

Ains, but.

[P. xxxvii.](#) *semondray*, shall ask.

esbahy, amazed.

tollez, take away.

creanca, promised.

lees, wide, full.

lices, lists.

[P. xxxviii.](#) *emmy le pas*, in the midst of the passage.

hucher, to cry aloud.

[P. xxxix.](#) *lieue*, lifts.

saisine, disposal.

enseignes, tokens.

aincoys, first of all.

[P. xl.](#) *oncques mes*, never.

a resiouyr (réjouir), in amusing.

escondiroye, will refuse.

me poyse, it troubles me.

pieca, long ago.

se embronche, covers his face.

[P. xli.](#) *sen esueillerent*, awoke thereat.

Adonc, then.

riens forfait, anyway injured.

[P. xlii.](#) *ne me mescreez mye que*, do not doubt me more than.

[P. xliii.](#) *doint*, gives, were to give.

[P. xliv.](#) *mesgnie*, properly the *suite* or household of a prince; see Roquefort s.v. *magnie* and *maignee*.

nef, a boat.

loue, advise.

[P. xlv.](#) *vous esmayez*, afflict yourself.

courrouce, wroth, displeased.

[P. xlvi.](#) *vergier*, orchard.

aual, below.

se embroncha, she veiled herself, or, hid herself.

iouxte, beside.

[P. xlvii.](#) *maintes*, many.

ot, heard.

len prise mieulx, esteemed it better.

loe, praises.

deffera, dis-ironed, drew the weapons out of.

lestrief, the stirrup.

[P. xlviii.](#) *leans (la dedans)*, there.

belif. We find in Cotgrave's French Dictionary, "*Belic*, a kind of red or geueles, in Blazon."

enseignes, tokens, message.

[P. xlix.](#) *mestier*, serviceable.

dillec, thence.

pourneant, for nothing, in vain.

voire, truly.

commanday a dieu, commended to God, bade farewell.

[P. li.](#) *mestier en est*, there is need of it.

greigneur bien, exceedingly well, very highly.

[P. lii.](#) *greigneure*, greater.
anuytoit, became night.
ie me doibz pener, I ought to take pains.

[P. liii.](#) *ouen*, this year.

¹ The extracts are from the Paris edition of 1513, 3 vols. folio, a copy of which is in the King's Library in the British Museum. There are also two other editions in the Museum, one in the Grenville Library, 3 vols. Paris, 1494, folio; the other in one folio volume, Paris, 1520.

² See [ll. 1447-1449](#).

³ Lines [215](#), [220](#).

⁴ Line [223](#).

⁵ Lines [237-245](#).

⁶ Lines [249-252](#).

⁷ Line [255](#).

⁸ Lines [257-259](#).

⁹ Lines [263](#), -4.

¹⁰ See [ll. 244](#), -5.

¹¹ Line [267](#).

¹² Lines [363-527](#).

¹³ Lines [540-592](#).

¹⁴ Line [280](#).

¹⁵ Lines [233-252](#).

¹⁶ Lines [281-292](#).

¹⁷ Lines [634-894](#).

¹⁸ Lines [895-974](#).

¹⁹ Lines [975-1138](#).

²⁰ Lines [1275-2130](#).

²¹ Lines [1543-1584](#).

²² Lines [1139-1152](#).

²³ Lines [1181-1274](#).

²⁴ Lines [2161-2256](#).

- ²⁵ Lines [2347-2442](#).
- ²⁶ Lines [2504-2530](#).
- ²⁷ Lines [2531-3268](#).
- ²⁸ Lines [3343-3487](#).
- ²⁹ There is no trace of the rest of this chapter in the Scottish poem.
- ³⁰ Line [3432](#).
- ³¹ Lines [3435-3440](#).
- ³² Lines [3441-3476](#).
- ³³ Lines [3477-3480](#).
- ³⁴ Lines [3481-3484](#).
- ³⁵ Lines [3485](#), [6](#).
- ³⁶ Line [3487](#) *and last*.
- ³⁷ Compare lines [3365-3368](#).
- ³⁸ Lines [3369](#), [70](#).
- ³⁹ Compare lines [3391-3426](#).
- ⁴⁰ Compare line [1140](#).
- ⁴¹ Compare lines [2845-8](#).
- ⁴² The original has *pat*.

The Romans of Lancelot of the Laik.

[PROLOGUE.]

[Fol. 1.]

THe soft morow ande The lustee Aperill,
The wynter set, the stormys in exill,
In April, when the fresh
luminary upriseth,
Quhen that the brycht *and* fresch illumynare
4 Uprifith arly in his fyre chare
His hot courß in to the orient,
and sendeth from his sphere his
golden streams,
And frome his spere his goldine stremis sent
Wpone the grond, in maner off mefag,
8 One euery thing to valkyne thar curage,
That natur haith set wnder hire mycht,
Boith gyrß, and flour, *and* euery lusty vicht:
And namly thame that felith the assay
12 Of lufe, to schew the kalendis of may,
Throw birdis longe *with* opine wox one hy,
That felfit not one lufaris for to cry,
Left thai forghet, throw flewth of Ignorans,
16 The old wlage of lowis obleruans.
and when I espy his bright face,
And frome I can the bricht face asspy,

It deuit me no langare fore to ly,
Nore that loue schuld fleuth In to me finde,

ET BEWAILS HIS LOT.

I walk forth, bewailing my sad
life.

20 Bot walkine furth, bewalinge in my mynde
the dredful lyve endurit al to longe,
Sufferans in loue of forouful harmys ftronge,
The fcharpe dais and the hewy 3erys,
24 Quhill phebus thris haith paffith al his fperis,
Vithoutine hope ore trailtinge of comfort;
So be such meine fatit was my sort.
Thus in my faull Rolinge al my wo,

The sword of love carves my
heart.

28 My carful hart carwing cañ In two
The derdful fuerd of lowis hot diffire;
So be the morow set I was a-fyre
In felinge of the acceß hot *and* colde,
32 That haith my hart in sich a fevir holde,
Only to me thare was noñe vthir eß
Bot thinkine qhow I schulde my lady pleß.
The fcharp affay and ek the Inwart peine
36 Of dowblit wo me neulyngis cañ constrein,
Quhen that I have remembrith one my thocht

My lady knoweth not how I am
wobegone.

How sche, quhois bewte al my harm haith wrocht,

[Fol. 1 b.]

Ne knouith not how I ame wo begoñe,
40 Nor how that I ame of hire *feruandis* oñe;
And in my felf I cañ nocht fynde the meyne
In to quhat wyß I fal my wo compleine.

S A VISION OF A GREEN BIRD.

I walked thus in the field, and
came to a well-beseen garden.

Thus in the feild I walkith to *and* froo,
44 As *thochtful* wicht that felt of *nocht* bot woo,
Syne to o gardinge, that weß weil beseñ,
Of quiche the feild was al depaynt *with* greñ.
The tendyre and the lufty flouris new
48 Up thrōue the greñ vpone thar *Italkis* grew
Azhane the sone, and thare levis spred,
Quhar*with* that al the gardinge was I-clede;
That pryapus, in to his tyme before,
52 In o luftear walkith nevir more;

It was closely environed with
leaves.

And al about enweronyt and Iclofit
One lich o wyß, that none *within* suppoſit
Fore to be señ *with* ony vicht thare owt;

¹ MS. "clofit."

56 So dide the levis clof it ¹ all about.

² May we read "alcest"?

Thar was the flour, thar was the queñ alpheft, ²
Rycht wering being of the *nychtis* reft,
Wncloſing gañe the crownel for the day;

The sun illumined the sprays;

60 The *brycht* sone illumynit haith the spray,
The *nychtis* sobir ande the moſt ſchowris,
As criſtoll terys *withhong* vpone the flouris,
Haith vpwarpith In the lufty aire,
64 The morow makith soft, ameyne, and faire;

the birds sang till the woods
resounded;

And the byrdis thar *mychty* voce out-throng,
Quhill al the wood refonite of thar ſonge,
That gret confort till ony vicht It wer
68 That pleffith thame of luſtenes to here.

Bot gladneß til the thochtful, euer mo
The more he feith, the more he haith of wo.

the garden was adorned with
flowers.

Thar was the garding *with* the flouris ourfret,
72 Quich is in pofy fore my lady set,
That hire Reprefent to me oft befor,

³ MS. "befor."

And thane alfo; thus al day gan be for ³
Of thocht my goft *with* torment occupy,

[Fol. 2.]

I fell there into an ecstasy or
sleep,

76 That I became In to one exafy,
Ore flep, or how I wot; bot fo befell
My wo haith done my livis goft expell,
And in fch wiß weil long I can endwr,
80 So me betid o wondir aventur.
As I thus lay, Rycht to my fpreit vas feñ

and saw in my dream a green
bird, who said:

A birde, yat was as ony lawrare greñ,
A-licht, and fayth in to hir birdis chere;

RD'S MESSAGE.

84 "O woful wrech, that levis in to were!
To fchew the thus the god of loue me fent,
That of thi *feruice* no thing is content,

"The God of Love is discontent
with thee.

For in his court yhoue lewith *in* diffpar,
88 And vilfully sustenis al thi care,
And fchapith no thinge of thine awn remede,
Bot clepith ay and cryith apone dede.
Yhow callith the birdis be morow fro thar bouris,

92 Yhoue devith boith the erbis and the flouris,
And clepit hyme vnfaithful king of lowe,
Yow dewith hyme in to his rigne abufe,
Yhow tempith hyme, yhoue doith thi felf no gud,

You are destitute of wit.

96 Yhoue are o moñ of wit al deftitude.
Wot yhoue *nocht* that al liwis creatwre
Haith of thi wo in to his hand the cwre?

Though you call on trees, your
lady hears not.

And fet yhoue clep one erbis and one treis,
100 Sche heris not thi wo, nore 3hit fche feis;
For none may know the dirkneß of thi *thocht*,
Ne blamyth *her* thi wo fche knowith *nocht*.
And It is weil accordinge It be so
104 He fuffir harme, that to redreß his wo
Previdith not; for long ore he be fonde,
Holl of his leich, that fchewith not his vound.

Ovid says it is better to shew,
than to conceal love.

And of owid ye autor fchall yhow knaw
108 Of lufe that feith, for to confel or fchow,
The laft he clepith althir-best of two;
And that is futh, and fal be euer mo.
And loue alfo haith chargit me to fay,

[Fol. 2 b.]

112 Set yhoue prefume, ore beleif, ye affay
Of his *feruice*, as It wil ryne ore go,
Prefwme It not, fore It wil not be so;
Al magre thine a *feruand* fchal yow bee.

As touching thine adversity,
seek the remedy."

116 And as tueching thine *aduerfytee*,
Compleen and sek of the ramed, the cwre,
Ore, gif yhow likith, furth thi wo endure."

And, as me *thocht*, I anfuerde azaiñe

Then answered I:

120 Thus to the byrde, in wordis *schort* and plane:

“It ganyth not, as I have harde *Recorde*,

The *seruand* for to *disput* *with* ye lord;

“Love knows the reason of my
wo.”

Bot well he knowith of al my vo the quhy,

124 And in quhat wyß he hath me set, quhar I

Nore may I not, nore can I not attane,

Nore to hir hienes dare I not compleane.”

DS HIM WRITE A POEM.

“Fool,” said the bird, “despair
not;

“Ful!” *quod* the bird, “lat be thi nyß *dispare*,

128 For in this erith no lady is so fare,

So hie estat, nore of so gret *empriß*,

That in hire self haith *visdome* ore gentrice,

Yf that o wicht, that worthy is to be

132 Of lovis court, *schew* til hir that he

Seruith hire in lovis hartly wyß,

That *schall* thar for hyme hating or *dispiß*.

the God of Love charges thee to
speak out your love, or else to
write thy plaint;

The god of love thus chargit the, at *schort*,

136 That to thi lady yhoue thi wo *Report*;

Yf yhoue may not, thi plant *schall* yhov writ.

Se, as yhoue cane, be *maner* oft endit

In metir, quhich that no man haith *fusspek*,

140 Set oft tyme thai *contenyng* gret *effecc*;

Thus one fume wyß yhow *schal* thi wo *dwclar*.

And, for thir *sedulis* and thir *billis* are

So *generall*, and ek so *schort* at lyte,

144 And fwme of thaim is loft the appetit,

write, then, some treatise for her
to read;

Sum trety fchall yhoue for yi lady fak,
That wnkouth is, als tak one hand and mak,
Of love, ore armys, or of fum othir thing,
148 That may hir one to thi Remembryng brynge;

[Fol. 3.]

Qwich foundith Not one to no hewynes,
Bot one to gladneß and to lusteneß,

one that may please her and get
her thanks.

That yhoue belevis may thi lady pleß,
152 To have hir thonk and be one to hir eß;
That fche may wit in feruice yhow art one.

Farewell, and be merry.”

Faire weil,” quod fche, “thus fchal yhow the dispone,
And mak thi felf als mery as yhoue may,
156 It helpith not thus fore to wex al way.”
With that, the bird fche haith hir leif tak,

Thereon I awoke, and wondered
what it might mean.

For fere of quich I can onone to wak;
Sche was ago, and to my felf thocht I
160 Quhat may yis meyne? quhat may this lignify?
Is It of troucht, or of Illufioun?

OLVES TO DO SO.

Bot finaly, as in conclufioun,
Be as be may, I fchal me not discharge,
164 Sen It apperith be of lovis charg;
And ek myne hart noñe othir biffynes
Haith bot my ladice feruice, as I geß;

I determined to take in hand this
occupation.

Among al vtheris I fchal one honde tak
168 This litil occupatioune for hire lak.
Bot hyme I pray, the mychty gode of loue,
That fitith hie in to his spir abuf,
(At *command* of o wyß quhois vifioune
172 My goft haith takin this opvnioune,)
That my lawboure may to my lady pleß
And do wnto hir ladeschip *fum* eß,
So that my *trauell* be *nocht* tynt, and I
176 Quhat vtheris say fetith nothing by.

I know it will but hurt my name,
when men hear my feeble
negligence.

For wel I know that, be this worldis famē.
It fchal not be bot hurting to my namē,
Quhen that thai here my febil negligens,
180 That empit is, and bare of eloquens,
Of discreffioune, and ek of Retoryk;
The metire and the cuning both elyk
So fere discording frome perfeccioune;

I submit my poem to the
correction of the wise;

184 *Quhilk* I submyt to the correccioune
Of yaim the quhich that is discret *and* wyß,
And enterit is of loue in the *seruice*;

[Fol. 3 b.]

Quhich knouyth that no lovare dare *withstonde*,
188 Quhat loue hyme chargit he mot tak one honde,
Deith, or defamē, or ony maner wo;
And at this tyme *with* me It ftant *rycht* fo,

for I dare not oppose Love's
command.

As I that dar makine no demande
192 To quhat I wot It lykith loue *commande*.
Tueching his chargis, as *with* al deftitut,

Within my mynd schortly I conclud
For to fulfyll, for ned I mot do fo.

NKS OF THE STORY OF LANCELOT.

196 Thane in my thocht rolling to and fro
Quhare that I myhct *fum* wnkouth mater fynde,

At last I thought of the story of
“Lancelot of the Lake,”

Quhill at ye laft it fell in to my mynd
Of o story, that I befor had sene,
200 That boith of loue and armys can contēñ,
Was of o knyght clepit lancelot of ye laik,
The sone of bane was, king of albanak;
Of quhois fame *and* worfchipful dedis
204 Clerkis in to diuerß bukis redis,

of whom I here think to write
something.

Of quhome I thynk her *fum* thing for to writ
At lous charge, and as I cane, endit;
Set men tharin fal by *experiens*
208 Know my confait, and al my negligens.

But because my ignorance
cannot comprehend the French
romance,

Bot for that story is so pasing larg,
One to my wit It war so gret o charg
For to tranflait the romans of that knyght;
212 It passith fare my cunyng and my mycht,
Myne Ignorans may It not comprehende;

EFLY ENUMERATES

I shall not tell how he was born;
Quharfor thare one I wil me not depend
How he was borne, nor how his fader deid
216 And ek his moder, nore how he was denyed
Efter thare deth, *prefumyng* he was ded,

nor how he was nourished by
the Lady of the Lake;

Of al ye lond, nore how he fra that ftede
In sacret wyß wnwyft away was tak,
220 And nwrift *with* ye lady of ye lak.

nor how he was brought to
Arthur's court,

Nor, in his 3outh, think I not to tell
The auentouris, quhich to hyme befell;
Nor how the lady of the laik hyme had
224 One to the court, quhare that he knycht was mad;

[Fol. 4.]

None wift his nome, nore how that he was tak
By loue, and was Iwondit to the ftak,

and pierced to the heart by the
beauty of Wanore (Guinevere),

And throuch *and* throuch perfit to ye hart,
228 That al his tyme he couth It not astart;
For thare of loue he enterit in seruice,
Of wanore throuch the beute and franchis,

for whose service he wrought
many wonders;

Throuch quhois seruice in armys he has vrocht
232 Mony wonderis, and perellis he has socht.
Nor how he thor, in to his 3oung curage,

nor how he made a vow to
revenge a wounded knight,

Hath maid awoue, and in to lous rage,
In the rewenging of o wondit knycht
236 That cumyne was in to the court that nycht;

⁴ MS. "abrokin."

who had a broken sword in his
head, and a truncheon of a
broken spear in his body;

In to his hed a brokin ⁴ fuerd had he,
And in his body alfo mycht men see

The tronfione of o brokine ſper that was,
240 Quhich no man out dedenyt to aras;
Nor how he haith the wapnis out tak,
And his awow apone this wis can mak,
That he ſchuld hyme Reweng at his poware
244 One euery knyght that louith the hurtare
Better thane hyme, the quhich that vas Iwond.
Throw quich awoue in armys hath ben founde

⁵ The MS. wrongly transposes ll. 247 and 248.

a vow which caused the death
of many a wight warrior;

The deth of mony wereoure ful wicht; ⁵
248 For, fro tho wow was knowing of the knyght,
Thare was ful mony o paſage in the londe
By men of armys kepit to withſtand
This knyght, of quhome thai ben al ſet afyre
252 Thaim to reweng in armys of defir.

or how he and Sir Kay were
ſent to defend the lady of
Nohalt;

Nor how that thane incontynent was ſend
He and *fir* kay togidder to defend
The lady of nohalt, nor how that hee
256 Gouernit hyme thare, nore in quhat degre.
Nor how the gret paſing vaſſolag
He eſcheuit, thrōue the outragouß curag,

or how he conquered the
Sorrowful Caſtle;

In conquiryng of the ſorowful caſtell.
260 Nor how he paſſith doune in the cauiſ fell,
And furth ye keys of Inchantment brocht,
That al diſtroyt quhich that thare vas vrocht.

[Fol. 4 b.]

or how he reſcued Sir Gawane
and his nine fellows;

Nore howe that he reskewit *lir* gawane,
264 *With* his ix falouß in to presone tane;
Nore mony vthere diuerß aduenture,
Quhich to report I tak not in my cwre,

LOT'S EARLY DEEDS.

nor of the many “assemblies”
Gawane held to find out his
name;

Nor mony assemblay that gawane gart be maid
268 To wit *his* name; nor how that he hyme hade
Wnwift, and hath the worfchip *and* empriß;

⁶ We should perhaps omit “mony.”

Nor of the knychtis in to mony ⁶ diuerß wyß
Throuh his awoue that hath thare dethis found;

nor of his suffering caused by
love’s wound;

272 Nor of the sufferans that by lous wounde
He in his trawel sufferith *auer* more;
Nor in the quenis *presens* how tharfor

nor how he was nearly drowned
at Camelot;

By camelot, in to that gret Revare,
276 He was ner dround. I wil It not declare
How that he was in lous hewy thocht

nor how he was brought to court
by Dagenet;

By dagenet in to the court I-brocht;
Nor how the knycht that tyme he cane *perfew*,

nor of the giants he slew at
Camelot;

280 Nor of the gyantis by camelot he flew;
Nor wil I not her tell the maner how
He flew o knycht, by *natur* of his wow,

nor how he slew a knight of
Melyholt;

Off melyholt; nore how in to that toune
284 Thar came one hyme o gret confulione
Of pupil *and* [of] knyghtis, al enarmyt,

and there defended himself
against a crowd;

Nor how he thar haith keptit hyme wnharmyt;
Nor of his worfchip, nor of his gret prowes,
288 Nor his defens of armys in the pres.

whereupon the lady of Melyhalt
prayed him to yield his sword to
her; and kept him in her power.

Nor how the lady of melyhalt yat fche
Came to the feild, and pray[i]th hyme that he

⁷ MS. "his."

As to o lady to hir ⁷ his fuerd hath 3old,
292 Nor how he was in to hir keping hold;
And mony vthir nobil deid alfo
I wil report quharfor I lat ourgo.

Whoever likes, might make of
these things a long story.

For quho thaim lykith for to fpecyfy,
296 Of one of thaim mycht mak o gret ftory;
Nor thing I not of his hye renōwn
My febil wit to makin menfioune;

But I think to tell of the wars
between Arthur and Galiot;

Bot of the weris that was fcharp *and* ftrong,
300 Richt perellouß, and hath enduryt long,

[Fol. 5.]

Of Arthur In defending of his lond
Frome galiot, fone of the fair gyonde,
That brocht of knyghtis o pafing confluens;

wherein Lancelot won renown
by his defence of Arthur;

304 And how lancelot of arthuris hol defens
And of the veris berith the renown;

And how he be the wais of fortounē

and at last made peace between
the two princes.

Tuex the two princis makith the accorde,
308 Of al there mortall weris to concorde;

I shall also tell how Venus
rewarded him.

And how that venus, fiting hie abuf,
Reuardith hyme of trauell in to loue,
And makith hyme his ladice grace to have,
312 And thankfully his seruice cane refave;
This is the mater quhich I think to tell.
Bot ftill he mot rycht with the lady duell,
Quhill tyme cum eft that we schal of hym fpek.

My summary must end for the
present.

316 This proceß [now] mot clofine beñ and ftek;
And furth I wil one to my mater go.

DEDICATION.

But I pray for the support of a
very great poet,

Bot first I pray, and I befek also,
One to the moft conpilour to fupport,
320 Flour of poyetis, quhois nome I wil report
To me nor to noñ vthir It accordit,

whose name I may not mention;

In to our rymyng his nam̄ to be recordit;
For fūm fūld deme It of prefumpfioune,

for our riming is but derision,
when his excellence is
remembered.

324 And ek our rymyng is al bot deryfioune,
Quhen that remembrit is his excellens,
So hie abuf that ftant in reuerans.
Ye fresch enditing of his laiting tounge

The world knows his eloquence
in inditing Latin;
328 Out throuch yis world fo wid is yroung,
Of eloquens, and ek of retoryk;
Nor is, nor was, nore neuer beith hyme lyk,
and none can ever gladden the
world like him:
This world gladith of his fuet poetry.
332 His faul I blyß conferuyt be for-thy;
to him be the thanks for my
success.
And yf that ony lusty terme I wryt
He haith the thonk yerof, *and* this endit.

EXPLICIT PROLOGUS, ET INCIPIT PRIMUS LIBER.

R AT CARLISLE.

[BOOK I.]

[Fol. 5 *b.*]

Quhen [that] tytan, withe his lusty heit,
336 Twenty dais In to the aryeit
When Titan, being in Aries, had
apparelled the fields,
Haith maid his courß, and all with diuerß hewis
Aparalit haith the feldis and the bewis;
and birds began to make their
bowers;
The birdis amyd the erbis *and* the flouris,
340 And one the branchis, makyne gone thar bouris,
And be the morow finging in ther chere
Welcum to the lufty feffone of the 3ere.

In to this tyme the worthi conqueroure

king Arthur was at Carlisle.

344 Arthure, wich had of al this worlde the floure
Of cheuelry auerding to his crown,
So pafing war his knyghtis in renoune,
Was at carlill; and hapynnit fo that hee
348 Soiornyt well long in that faire cuntree.

His knights, hearing of no
adventure, were annoyed.

In to whilk tyme In to the court thai heire
None awenture, for wich the knyghtis weire
Anoit all at the abiding thare.

352 For-why, beholding one the fobir ayre
And of the tyme the pafing luftynes,
Can fo thir knyghtly hartis to encreß,

They therefore sent Sir Kay to
pray the king to go to Camelot.

That thei shir kay one to the king haith fende,
356 Befeiching hyme he wold wichlaif to wende
To camelot the Cetee, whare that thei
Ware wont to heryng of armys day be day.
The king forfuth, heryng thare entent,
360 To thare defir, be schort awyßment,

The king proposed to do so on
the morrow.

Ygrantid haith; and fo the king proponit

⁸ MS. “to pas one hyme one,” with first “one” lightly crossed out.
And for to pas hyme one ⁸ the morne disponit.

R’S TWO DREAMS.

Bot fo befell hyme [on] that nycht to meit
364 An aperans, the wich one to his fpreit

That night he dreamt that his
hair all fell off;

It femyth that of al his hed ye hore

Of fallith and maid defolat; wharfore
The king therof was pensyve in his mynd,
368 That al the day he couth no resting fynde,

which made him delay his
journey.

Wich makith hyme his Iorneye to delaye.
And so befell apone the thrid day,
The bricht fone, pasing in the west,
372 Haith maid his courß, and al thing goith to Rest;

Again he dreamt, that his
bowels fell out, and lay beside
him.

The king, so as the story can dewyß,
He thought azeine, apone the samyne wyß,

[Fol. 6.]

His vombe out fallith with his hoil syde
376 Apone the ground, *and* liging hyme befid;
Throw wich anon out of his flep he stert,
Abafit and adred in to his hart.

He told the queen, who
answered, "No man should
respect vain dreams."

The wich be morow one to the qwen he told,
380 And she azeine to hyme haith anfuer 3olde;
"To dremys, *fir*, shuld no man have Respek,
For thei ben thingis weyn, of non affek."
"Well," quod the king, "god grant It so befall!"

The king next shewed his dream
to a clerk,

384 Arly he roß, and gert one to hyme call
O clerk, to whome that al his hewynes
Tweching his drem shewith he expreß,

who said, "Sir, such things
testify nothing."

Wich anfuer yaf and feith one to the kinge;
388 "Shir, no Record lyith to such thing;

Wharfor now, fhir, I praye yow tak no kep,
Nore trait in to the vanyteis of slep;
For thei are thingis that askith no credens,
392 But caufith of fum maner influens,
Empriß of thoght, ore superfleuytee,
Or than fum othir cafualytee.”

“Yet,” replied he, “I shall not
leave it so.”

“3it,” quod the king, “I fal nocht leif It so;”

IDS FOR HIS CLERKS.

396 And furth he chargit mefingeris to go
Throgh al his Realm, *withouten* more demande,

He bade all the bishops and
clergy come to Camelot within
twenty days.

And bad them stratly at thei fhulde comande
All the bißhopes, and makyng no delay
400 The fhuld appere be the tuinty day
At camelot, with al thar hol clergy
That moft expert war, for to certefye
A mater tueching to his goft be nyght;
404 The mefag goith furth with the *lettres* Right.

The king eft fone, *within* a litill fpace,
His Iornay makith haith frome place to place,

He goes to Camelot, and finds
the clerks assembled.

Whill that he cam to camelot; and there
408 The clerkis all, as that the chargit were,
Affemblit war, and came to his prefens,
Of his defir to viting the fentens.
To them that war to hyme moft fpeciall
412 Furth his entent fhauyth he al hall;

He discloses all to the ten that

are most expert,
By whois confeil, of the worthiest
He cheifith ten, yclepit for the best,
And most expert and wifest was supposit,

[Fol. 6 b.]

416 To qwhome his drem all hail he haith discloffit;
The houre, the nyght, and al the cercumftans;

and beseeches them to explain
the dreams.

Befichyne them that the fignifycans
Thei wald hyme fhaw, that he mycht refting fynde
420 Of It, the wich that occupeid his mynde.

⁹ MS. "saith with" (with a very slight scratch through "saith").

And one of them with ⁹ al ther holl affent

One of them asks for nine days
to advise upon the matter.

Saith, "fhire, fore to declare our entent
Vpone this matere, ye wil ws delay
424 Fore to awyfling one to the ix day."
The king ther-to grantith haith, bot hee

The king complies, but shuts
them up in a strong place.

In to o place, that ftrong was and hye,
He clofith them, whare thei may no whare get,
428 Vn to the day, the wich he to them set.
Than goith the clerkis fadly to awyß
Of this mater, to feing in what wyß
The kingis drem thei fhall beft fpecefy.

The masters of astronomy fetch
their books,

432 And than the maiftris of aftronomy

¹⁰ So in MS. Read "fet."

The bookis longyne to ther artis set; ¹⁰
Not was the bukis of arachell forget,
Of nembrot, of danzhelome, thei two,

436 Of moyfes, *and* of herynes all soo;

and calculate the disposition of
the planets.

And feking be ther calcolacioune

To fynd the planetis difpoficioune,

The wich thei fond ware wonder ewill yfet

440 The famyne nyght the king his fweuen met.

REFUSE TO EXPLAIN THEM.

So ner the point focht thei have the thing,

They found the matter heavy for
the king, and doubted if they
should tell him so.

Thei fond It wonder hewy to the king,

Of wich thing thei waryng in to were

444 To fhew the king, for dreid of his danger.

Of ane accorde thei planly haue *proponit*

No worde to fhew, and fo thei them difponit.

Being sent for,

The day is cumyng, and he haith fore them fent,

448 Befichyne them to fhewing ther entent.

they all spake, "Sir, we can find
no evidence."

Than fpak they all, and that of an accorde;

"Shir, of this thing we can no thing Recorde,

For we can noght fynd in til our fciens

452 Tweching this mater ony ewydens."

"Ere we part," quoth the king,
"ye shall witness something."

"Now," *quod* the king, "and be the glorijs lorde,

Or we depart ye fhall fum thing recorde;

So pas yhe not, nor fo It fall not bee."

456 "Than," *quod* the clerkis, "grant ws dais three."

[Fol. 7.]

He grants them three days more.

The wich he grantid them, and but delay,

The term passith, no thing wold the say,
Wharof the king stondith heuy cherith,
460 And to the clerkis his vilag so apperith,
That all thei dred them of the kingis myght.

They pray for a further delay of
three days.

Than faith o clerk, “sir, as the thrid nyght
Ye dremyt, so [now] giffis ws delay
464 The thrid tyme, and to the thrid day.”
By whilk tyme thei fundyng haith the ende
Of this mater, als far as shal depend
To ther sciens; yit can thei not awyß
468 To schewing to the king be ony wyß.

They still refuse to declare their
thought.

The day is cum, the king haith them befocht,
But one no wyß thei wald declar ther thoght;
Than was he wroth in to his self and noyt,

The king vows to destroy them;

¹¹ MS. “fhat.”

472 And maid his wow that thei shal ¹¹ ben diftroyt.
His baronis he commandit to gar tak
Fyve of them one to the fir-ftak,
And vther fyue be to the gibbot tone;
476 And the furth *with* the kingis charg ar gone.

but secretly charges his knights
not to harm them.

He bad them in to secret wyß that thei
Shud do no harm, but only them aßeey.
The clarkis, dredful of the kingis Ire,
480 And saw the perell of deth and of the fyre,
Fyve, as thei can, has grantit to record;
That vther herde and ben of ther accorde;

And al thei ben yled one to the king,

They yield at last, and say,

484 And shew hyme thus as tueching of this thing.

“Shir, fen that we conftrenyt ar by myght

¹² MS. “wich that.”

To shaw that wich ¹² we know no thing aricht;

For thing to cum preferuith It allan

488 To hyme the wich is euery thing certaĩ,

Excep the thing that til our knowleg hee

Hath ordynat of certan for to bee;

Therfor, shir king, we your magnificens

492 Befeich It turne till ws to non offens,

“Hold us not as liars, though it
happen not as we say.

Nor hald was *nocht* as *learis*, thocht It fall

Not in this mater, as that we telen shall.”

And that the king haith grantit them, *and* thei

496 Has chargit one, that one this wiß fall seye.

“Prefumyth, shir, that we have fundyne so;

¹³ MS. “nedift;” but see [l. 518](#).

You must forego all earthly
honour;

All erdly honore ye nedis ¹³ moft for-go,

[Fol. 7 b.]

and those on whom you most
rely, will fail you.”

And them the wich ye moft affy in-tyll

500 Shal failye 3ow, magre of ther will;

And thus we haue in to this matere founde.”

The king, quhois hart was al wyth dred ybownd,

And askit at the clerkis, if thei fynde

504 By there clergy, that stant in ony kynde

The king asks if his destiny can
be altered.

Of possibilibtee, fore to reforme

His deſteny, that ſtud in ſuch a forme;
If in the hewyne Is preordynat
508 On ſuch o wiß his honor to tranſlat.
The clerkis faith, “forſuth, and we haue ſene

They reply, that the matter is
dark.

O thing whar-of, if we the trouth ſhal meñ,
Is ſo obſcure and dyrk til our clergie,
512 That we wat not what It ſhal ſignefye,
Wich cauſith ws we can It not furth ſay.”
“Yis,” *quod* the king, “as lykith yow ye may,
For wers than this can nat be laid for me.”

A maſter ſays, there is no help
but in the true watery lion, and
in the leech, and in the flower.

ERKS GIVE MYSTERIOUS ADVICE.

516 Thane faith o maiftir, “than ſuthly *thus* finde we;
Thar is no thing ſal ſucour nor reſkew,
Your worldly honore nedis moſt adew,
But throuch the watrye lyone *and* ek fyne,
520 On throuch the liche *and* ek the wattir fyne,

God knows what this ſhould
mean.

And throuch the confeill of the flour; god wot
What this ſhude meñ, for mor ther-of we not.”
No word the king anfuerid ayane,
524 For al this refone thinkith bot *in* weyne.

The king ſhews no outward
grief,

He ſhawith outwart his contenans
As he therof takith no greuans;

but is not rid of anxiety all
night.

But al the nyght it paſſid nat his thocht.
528 The dais courß *with* ful defir he ſocht,

And furth he goith to bring his mynd *in* reft

Next day he goes to the forest.

With mony O knyght vn to the gret foreft;

The rachis gon wn-copelit for the deire,

532 That in the wodis makith nois *and* cheir:

The knychtis, *with* the grewhundis in aweit,

Secith boith the planis and the ftreit.

The chase.

Doune goith the hart, doune goith the hynd alfo;

¹⁴ A line must here be lost, but there is nothing to shew this in the MS. The inserted line is imitated from [l. 3293](#).

536 [In to the feld can rufching to and fro] ¹⁴

The fwift grewhund, hardy of affay;

Befor ther hedis no thing goith away.

The king of hunting takith haith his sport,

The king returns.

540 And to his palace home he can Refort,

Ayan the noon; and as that he was set

[Fol. 8.]

As they sit at meat, an aged
knight enters, fully armed.

Vith all his noble knyghtis at the met,

So cam ther in an agit knyght, *and* hee

544 Of gret efftat femyt for to bee;

Anarmyt all, as tho It was the gyß,

And thus the king he faluft, one this wiß,

Γ'S MESSAGE.

The knight's message is that
king Galiot bids Arthur to yield
to him his kingdom.

“S hir king, one to yow am y fende

548 Frome the worthieft that *in* world is kend,

That leuyth now of his tyme and age,
Of manhed, wilddome, *and* of hie curag,
Galiot, lone of the fare gyande;
552 And thus, at fhort, he bidis yow your londe
Ye yald hyme our, *without* Impedymment;
Or of hyme holde, and if tribut and rent.
This is my charge at fhort, whilk if youe left
556 For to fulfill, of al he haith conquest
He fais that he moft tendir fhal youe hald.”

The king refuses.

By fhort awys the king his anfuer yald;
“Shir knyght, your lorde wondir hie pretendis,
560 When he to me fic falutatioune sendis;
For I as yit, in tymys that ar gone,
Held neuer lond excep of god alone,
Nore neuer thinkith til erthly lord to yef
564 Trybut nor rent, als long as I may lef.”

The knight replies, that his lord
bids him defiance, and will
invade his land in a month;

“Well,” *quod* the knyght, “ful for repentith me;
Non may recift the thing the wich mone bee.
To yow, *fir* king, than frome my lord am I
568 With diffyans sent, and be this refone why;
His purpos Is, or this day moneth day,
With all his oft, planly to affay
Your lond, *with* mony manly man of were,

not to return till he has
conquered;

572 And helmyt knyghtis, boith with sheld *and* spere;
And neuer thinkith to retwrn home whill
That he this lond haith conquest at his will;

and he intends to possess queen
Vanour.

And ek vanour the quen, of whome that hee
576 Herith report of al this world that lhee
In fairhed and in wertew doith excede,
He bad me say he thinkis to possede.”

R DEFIES GALIOT.

Arthur returns his defiance.

“Schir,” *quod* the king, “your mefag me behufis
580 Of refone and of curtafy excuß;
But tueching to your lord *and* to his oft,
His powar [and] his mefag and his boft,
That pretendith my lond for to distroy,
584 Thar-of as 3it tak I non anoye;

[Fol. 8 b.]

And say your lord one my behalf, when hee
Haith tone my lond, that al the world shal see
That It shal be magre myne entent.”

The knight departs, lamenting
Arthur’s adventurous spirit.

588 With that the knyght, *withouten* leif, is went,
And richt as he was pafing to the dure,

¹⁵ MS. “agod^e.”

He faith, “a gode! ¹⁵ what wykyt aduenture
Apperith!” *with* that his hors he nome,
592 Two knichtis kepit, waiting his outcome.
The knicht is gon, the king he gan Inquere
At gawan, and at other knyghtis sere,

Arthur asks Gawane who Galiot
is.

If that thei knew or euer hard recorde

596 Of galiot, and wharof he wes lorde;
And ther was non among his knyghtis all
Which anfuerd o word in to the hall.
Than galygantynis of walys rafe,

Galygantynis of Wales replies,
600 That trauelit in diuerß londis has,
In mony knyghtly auentur haith ben;
And to the king he faith, “*fir*, I haue sen
Galiot, which is the fareft knyght,

that Galiot is the tallest knight
by half a foot of all he ever saw;
that he is wise, liberal, humble,
604 And hieft be half a fut one hycht,
That euer I saw, and ek his men accordith;
Hyme lakid *nocht* that to a lord recordith.
For vilare of his ag is non than hee,
608 And ful of larges and humylytee;

courageous, and under xxiv
years of age.
An hart he haith of pafing hie curag,
And is not xxiiij 3er of age,
And of his tyme mekil haith conquerit;

Ten kings obey him.
612 Ten kingis at his *command* ar fterit.
He *vith* his men so louit is, y geß,
That hym to pleß is al ther befynes.
Not lay I this, *fir*, in to ye entent
616 That he, nor none wnder the firmament,
Shal pouere haue ayane your maieftee;
And or thei fhuld, this y fey for mee,
Rather I fhall knyghtly in to feild
620 Refaue my deith anarmyt wnder fheld.
This spek y left;”—the king, ayan the morn,

The king goes again to the
chase.

Haith varnit huntaris baith with hund *and* horne,
And arly gan one to the forest ryd,
624 With mony manly knyghtis by his fid,
Hyme for to sport and comfort *with* the dere,
Set contrare was the fefone of y^e yere.

He likes boar-hunting best.

His moft huntynge was atte wyld bore;

[Fol. 9.]

628 God wot a lufty cuntree was It thoore,
In the ilk tyme! weil long this noble king
In to this lond haith maid his fuiornyng;

LDY OF MELYHALT'S MESSAGE.

A messenger comes from the
lady of Melyhalt,

Frome the lady was send o mefinger
632 Of melyhalt, wich faith one this maner,
As that the story shewith by recorde:

“**T**O yow, fir king, as to hir foueran lorde,
My lady hath me chargit for to fay
636 How that your lond stondith *in* affray;

to say that Galiot has entered
Arthur's land,

For galiot, fone of the fare gyande,
Enterit Is by armys in your land,
And fo the lond and cuntre he anyth,
640 That quhar he goith planly he distroyth,
And makith al obeifand to his honde,

and has conquered all but two
castles belonging to his
mistress.

That nocht is left wnconquest *in* that lond,
Excep two castellis longing to hir cwre,
644 Wich to defend she may nocht long endure.

Wharfor, *fir*, in wordis plan *and* fhort,
Ye mon difpone your folk for to fupport.”

The king promises not to delay,
and inquires the number of the
foe.

“Wel,” *quod* the king, “one to thi lady fay
648 The neid is myne, I fall It not delay;
But what folk ar thei nemmyt for to bee,
That in my lond is cumyne in lich degree?”

“A hundred thousand,” is the
reply.

“An hundreth thoufand boith with fheld *and* fpere
652 On hors ar armyt, al redy for the were.”

R’S READINESS FOR WAR.

“Wel,” *quod* the king, “and but delay this *nycht*,
Or than to morn as that the day is lycht,

The king says he will set off
that very night.

I fhall remuf; ther fhall no thing me mak
656 Impedymment, my lorney for to tak.”
Than feith his knyghtis al *with* one affent,

His knights advise him to wait
till he has raised an army.

“Shir, that is al contrare our entent;
For to your folk this mater is wnwift,
660 And ye ar here our few for to recift
3one power, and youre cuntre to defende;
Tharfor abid, and for your folk ye send,
That lyk a king and lyk a weriour
664 Ye may fuften in armys your honoure.”

“Now,” *quod* the king, “no langer that I 3eme
My crowne, my lepture, nor my dyademe,
Frome that I here, ore frome I wnderftand,
668 That ther by fors be entrit in my land
Men of armys, by ftrenth of vyolens,

He refuses to wait longer than
till the morrow.

If that I mak abid or refydens
In to o place langar than o nycht,
672 For to defend my cuntre *and* my rycht.”

[Fol. 9 b.]

The king that day his mefage haith furth sent
Throuch al his realme, and fyne to reft is went.

U p goith the morow, wp goith the brycht day,
676 Wp goith the sone in to his fresch aray;
Richt as he spred his bemys frome northeft,

The king arises next morning
without delay,

The king wpraß *withouten* more areft,
And by his awn confeil and entent
680 His Iornaye tuk at shorth awysment.
And but dulay he goith frome place to place

¹⁶ MS. “whare that,” with slight scratch through “that.”

Whill that he cam nere whare ¹⁶ the lady was,

and reaches a plain by the river
side,

And in one plane, apone o reuer fyde,
684 He lichtit doune, and ther he can abide;
And yit *with* hyme to batell fore to go

having only seven thousand
with him.

Vij thousand fechteris war thei, *and* no mo.

LOT’S LAMENT.

T his was the lady, of qwhome befor I tolde,

Lancelot, having been
imprisoned by the lady of
Melyhalt,

688 That lancilot haith in to hir kepinge holde;
But for to tell his pasing hewynesse,
His peyne, his sorow, and his gret distresse
Of presone and of loues gret suppris,
692 It war to long to me for to dewys.
When he remembrith one his hewy charge
Of loue, wharof he can hyme not discharge,
He wepith and he sorowith in his chere,
696 And euery nyght femyth hyme o yere.
Gret peite was the sorow that he maad,

laments his fate.

And to hyme-felf apone this wiß he faade:

Lancelot's lament;

“Q what haue y gilt, allace! or qwhat deseruit?

700 That thus myne hart shal vondit ben *and* carwit
One by the fuord of double peine and wo?

his pleasure is gone;

My comfort and my plesans is ago,
To me is nat that shuld me glaid referuit.

he curses his natal day;

704 I curß the tyme of myne Natiuitee,
Whar in the heuen It ordinyd was for me,
In all my lyue neuer til haue eesß;
But for to be example of difeß,
708 And that apperith that euery vicht may see.

Sen thelke tyme that I had sufficians
Of age, and chargit thoghtis sufferans,

he has never spent a single day
free from anxiety,

Nor neuer I *continewite* haith o day

712 With-out the payne of thoghtis hard affay;
Thus goith my youth in tempest *and* penans.

and is now in prison;

And now my body is In prefone broght;

[Fol. 10.]

But of my wo, that in Regard is noght,
716 The wich myne hart felith euer more.

and invokes Death.

O deth, allace! whi hath yow me forbore
That of remed haith the so long befoght!”

Thus neueremore he fefith to compleine,
720 This woful knyght that felith not bot peine;

Thus the smart of love’s sorrow
pricketh him.

So prekith hyme the smert of loues fore,
And euery day encreffith more and more.
And with this lady takine is also,

He is kept by her from the
exercise of knighthood;

724 And kepit whar he may no whare go
To haunt knyghthed, the wich he moft defirit;
And, thus his hart *with* dowbil wo yfirate,

and there we let him dwell.

We lat hyme duel here with the lady ftill,
728 Whar he haith laifere for to compleine his fyll.

¶ BESIEGES A CASTLE.

Meanwhile, Galiot besieged a
castle.

And galiot in this meyne tyme he laie
By ftrong myght o castell to affay,

With many engyne and diuerß wais fere,
732 For of fute folk he had a gret powere
That bowis bur, and vther Instrumētis,

His army had pavilions, tents,
and iron-wheeled chariots.

And with them lede ther palzōnis *and* ther tentis,
With mony o ftrong chariot and cher
736 With yrne qwhelis and barris long *and* sqwar;
Well stuffit with al maner apparell
That longith to o fege or to batell;
Whar-with his oft was clofit al about,
740 That of no strenth nedith hyme to dout.

When he heard of Arthur's
coming,

And when he hard the cumyne of the king,
And of his oft, and of his gaderyng,
The wich he reput but of febil myght
744 Ayanis hyme for to fulten the ficht,
His confell holl affemblit he, but were,

he assembled his council,

Ten knightis with other lordis fere,
And told theme of the cuming of the king,
748 And askit them there confell of that thing.

who thought it would degrade
him, to fight in proper person
against so few.

Hyme thoght that it his worfchip wold degrade,
If he hyme felf in *propir perfone* raide
Enarmyt ayane fo few menye
752 As It was told arthur[is] fore to bee;

RATION FOR THE BATTLE.

And thane the kyng-An-hundereth-knychtis cold,
(And fo he hot, for neuermore he wolde
Ryd of his lond, but In his cumpany
756 O hundyre knyghtis ful of chiuellry).

[Fol. 10 b.]

The king of a hundred knights
(Maleginis) undertakes the
exploit;

He faith, “shir, ande I one hond [may] tak,
If It you pleß, this Iorney fhal I mak.”
Quod galiot, “I grant It yow, but ye
760 Shal firft go ryd, yone knyghtis oft *and see*.”
With-outen more he ridith our the plan,
And faw the oft and is returnyd ayañ;
And callit them mo than he hade fen, for why
764 He dred the reprefe of his cumpany.

who reconnoitres Arthur’s host,
and says it is 10,000 strong:
whereon Galiot charges him to
take the same number.

And to his lord apone this wys faith hee,
“Shir, ten thoufand y ges them for to bee.”
And galiot haith chargit hyme to tak
768 Als fell folk, and for the feld hyme mak.
And fo he doith and haith them wel Arayt;
Apone the morne his banaris war difplayt.

Up goth the trumpetis with the clariounis,
772 Ayaine the feld blawen furth ther fownis,

Galiot’s host set out.

Furth goth this king *with* al his oft anon.
Be this the word wes to king arthur gone,
That knew no thing, nor wift of ther entent,

Arthur’s host don their armour.

776 But fone his folk ar one to armys went;
But arthur by Report hard saye

Arthur, hearing that Galiot is
unarmed, will not arm himself;

How galiot non armys bur that day,

Wharfor he thoght of armys nor of fheld
780 None wald he tak, nor mak hyme for the feld.

but calls Gawane, and tells him
how to order his battalions.

But gawane haith he clepit, was hyme by,
In qwhome Rignith the flour of cheuelry;
And told one what maner, and one what wyß
784 He fhuld his batelles ordand and dewys;
Befeching hyme, [hyme] willy to for-see
A3aine thei folk, wich was far mo than hee.
He knew the charg and paffith one his way
788 Furth to his horß, and makith no dulay;
The clariounis blew and furth goth al onon,

Gawane and his men cross over
the water at the ford.

And our ye watter and the furd ar goñe.
Within o playne vpone that other fyd
792 Ther gawan gon his batellis to dewide,
As he wel couth, and set them *in* aray,
Syne with o manly contynans can fay,

JE HARANGUES HIS MEN.

He harangues his men.

“Ye falowis wich of the round table beñ,
796 Through al this erth whois fam is hard *and* fen,
Remembrith now It ftondith one the poynt,

¹⁷ At the bottom of this page appears for the first time a catchword, which is— “The wel fare.”
For why It lyith one your fperis poynt, ¹⁷

[Fol. 11.]

The well-fare of the king and of our londe;
800 And fen the fucour lyith in your honde,
And hardement is thing shall moft awaill
Frome deth ther men of armys in bataill,
Lat now your manhed and your hie curage
804 The pryd of al thir multitude affuage;

Deth or defence, non other thing we wot.”

Maleginis and all his host come
over the plain, and Gawane
sends a company against them.

This fresch king, that maleginis was hot,
With al his oft he cummyne our the plañ,
808 And gawan fend o batell hyme agañ;

¹⁸ Or “berde.”

In myde the borde, ¹⁸ and festinit in the stell
The sperithis poynt, that bitith scharp *and* well;

But they were all too few;
wherefore Gawane sends a
second company;

Bot al to few thei war, and mycht nocht left
812 This gret Rout that cummyth one fo fast.
Than haith *fir* gawan fend, them to support,
One othir batell with one knychtly sorte;

then a third; then a fourth; and
then sets out himself, to resist
the 10,000.

And fyne the thrid, and fyne the ferde also;
816 And fyne hyme-self one to the feld can go,
When that he sauch thar latter batell fteir,
And the ten thoufand cummyne al thei veir;
Qwhar that of armes prewit he so well,
820 His ennemys gane his mortall [ftrokis] fell.

He goes among them in his
courage,

He goith ymong them in his hie curage,
As he that had of knyghthed the wfage,
And couth hyme weill *conten in* to on hour;
824 Azaine his ftrok refistit non armour;

and many other of Arthur’s
knights perform wonders.

And mony knycht, that worth ware and bolde,
War thore with hyme of arthuris houfhold,

And knyghtly gan one to the feld them bere,
828 And mekil wrought of armys In to were;

JE DEFEATS MALEGINIS.

Sir gawan than vpone such wyß hyme bure,

Maleginis goeth to
discomfiture, and 7,000 of his
men flee.

This othere goith al to discumfitoure;
Sewyne thoufand fled, *and* of the feld thei go,
832 Whar-of this king in to his hart was wo,
For of hyme self he was of hie curage.

To galiot than fend he in mefag,
That he shuld help his folk for to defende;

Galiot sends him 30,000 more.

836 And he to hyme hath xxx^{te} thousand sende;
Whar-of this king gladith in his hart,
And thinkith to Reweng all the smart

[Fol. 11 b.]

That he to-for haith suffirit and the payne.

His folk return across the field
as thick as hail.

840 And al his folk returnyt Is ayayne

¹⁹ MS. "thilk as (Rayne) haill," as if it were at first intended to find a rime to "ayayne."

Atour the feld, and cummyne thilk as haill; ¹⁹

The fwyft horß goith first to the affall.

This noble knyght that seith the grete forß

844 Of armyt men, that cummyne vpone horß,

To-giddir semblit al his falowfchip,

And thoght them at the fharp poynt to kep,

So that thar harm[̄]shal be ful deir yboght.

848 This vthere folk with ftraucht courß hath focht

Out of aray atour the larg felld;

Thar was the ftrokis festnit in the shelde,

Thei war Refaut at the fperis end.

Arthur's folk receive them
manfully.

852 So arthuris folk can manfully defend;
The formeft can thar lyues end conclude,
Whar lone affemblit al the multitude.
Thar was defens, ther was gret affaill,
856 Richt wonderfull and ftrong was y^e bataill,

but sustain much pain,
Whar arthuris folk fuftenit mekil payn,
And knyghtly them defendit haith azaine.

and cannot endure against so
many.

Bot endur thei mycht, apone no wyß,
860 The multitude and ek the gret fuppriß;

JE'S VALIANT DEEDS.

But gawan, wich that fetith al his payn
Vpone knyghthed, defendid fo azaine,
That only in the manhede of this knyght
864 His folk relofit them of his gret myght,
And ek abafit hath his ennemys;
For throw the feld he goith in fuch wyß,
And in the preß fo manfully them feruith,

Gawane carves helmets in two,
and smites heads off shoulders;

868 His fuerd atwo the helmys al to-kerwith,
The hedis of he be the fhouderis fmat;
The horß goith, of the maifter defolat.
But what awaleth al his befynes,
872 So ftrong and fo infufferable vas the preß?

but his men recross the ford to
go to their lodges.

His folk are paffit atour the furdil ilkon,
Toward ther breteis and to ther luges gon;
Whar he and many worthy knyght alfo

876 Of arthuris houß endurit mekill wo,
That neuer men mar in to armys vroght
Of manhed, 3it was It al for noght.

[Fol. 12.]

Thar was the ftrenth, ther was the pafing myght

Gawane fights alone till night,
880 Of gawan, wich that whill the dirk nyght
Befor the luges faucht al hyme aloñ,
When that his falowis entrit ware ilkoñ,
On arthuris half war mony tan and flan;

when Galiot's folk return home.

884 And galotis folk Is hame returnyd azaine,
For it was lait; away the oftis ridith,
And gawan 3it apone his horß abidith,
With fuerd in hond, when thei away var gon,
888 And so for-wrocht hys lymmys ver ilkon,
And wondit ek his body vp and doune,

Gawane swoons upon his horse.

Vpone his horß Right thore he fel in fwoune;
And thei hyme tuk *and* to his luyne bare,

The king and queen fear he has
brought himself to confusion.

892 Boith king and qwen of hyme vare in difpare;
For thei fuppoftit, throw marwellis that he vroght,
He had hyme-felf to his confufioun broght.

²⁰ See note to this line.

[T]his ²⁰ was nere by of melyhalt, the hyll,
896 Whar lanſcelot 3it was *with* the lady ftill.
The knyghtis of the court [can] pafing homē;
This ladiis knyghtis to hir palice com,
And told to hir, how that the feld was vent,

The lady of Melyhalt hears of
Gawane's deeds;

900 And of gawan, and of his hardyment,

That merwell was his manhed to behold;

and Lancelot also,

And lone thir tithingis to the knyght vas told,

That was with wo and hewynefs opprest;

904 So noyith hyme his fuorne and his reft,

who sends for a knight to take a
message to the lady;

And but dulay one for o knyght he send,

That was most speciall with the lady kend.

He comyne, and the knyght vn to hyme laid,

908 “Displeß yow not, *sir*, be 3he not ill paid,

So homly thus I yow exort to go,

To gare my lady speke o word or two

²¹ MS. “presonerere.”

With me, that am a carful *presonere*.” ²¹

912 “*Sir*, your commande y shall, *withouten* were,

Fulfill;” and to his lady passit hee

In lawly wyß befiching hir, that she

Wald grant hyme to pas at his request,

916 Vnto hir knyght, stood wnder hir areft;

And she, that knew al gentilleß aright,

²² Read “with” (?).

who comes to his chamber.

Furth to his chamber passit wight ²² the licht.

LOT PRAYS TO BE RELEASED.

[Fol. 12 b.]

And he aroß and saluft Curtaßly

Lancelot beseeches her to
appoint his ransom,

920 The lady, and laid, “madem, her I,

Your presoner, befekith yow that 3he

Wold merfy and compaffione have of me,

And mak the ranfone wich that I may yeif;
924 I waitt my tyme in presoun thus to leife.
For why I her on be report be told,
That arthur, with the flour of his housholde,
Is cummyne here, and in this cuntre lyis,
928 And stant In danger of his ennemyis,
And haith assemblit; and eft this shalt bee
Within short tyme one new assemblee.
Thar-for, my lady, y youe *grace* befech,
932 That I mycht pas, my Ranson for to fech;

presuming that some of
Arthur's knights will pay it.

Fore I *presume* thar longith to that fort
That loud me, and shal my nede support.”

LADY AT FIRST REFUSES;

“**S** hire knyght, It stant nocht in fich dugree;

She replies that she does not
want a ransom, but has
imprisoned him for his guilt.

936 It is no ranfone wich that caufith me
To holden yow, or don yow fich offens;
It is your gilt, It is your wiolens,
Whar-of that I defir no thing but law,
940 *Without* report your awñ trespas to know.”
“Madem, your plefance may ye wel fulfill
Of me, that am in *prefone* at your will.

He prays for pardon,
Bot of that gilt, I was for til excuß,
944 For that I did of werrey nede behwß,
It tuechit to my honore and my fame;
I mycht nocht lefe It but hurting of my nam,
And ek the knyght was mor to blam than I.
948 But ye, my lady, of your curteffly,

Wold 3e deden my Ransoune to refaue,

and begs for liberty:

Of prefone fo I my libertee myght haue,
Y ware 3olde euermore [to be] your knyght,
952 Whill that I leif, *with* al my holl myght.
And if fo be ye lykith not to ma

or at least to be allowed to go to
the next battle,

My ranfone, [madem,] if me leif to ga
To the affemble, wich fal be of new;

under a promise to return at
night.

956 And as that I am feithful knyght *and* trew,
At nyght to yow I enter fhall azaine,
But if that deth or other lat certañ,
Throw wich I [may] have fuch Impediment,

²³ MS. “behold.”

[Fol. 13.]

960 That I be hold, ²³ magre myne entent.”

LAST GRANTS HIS BOON.

She consents, if he will specify
to her his name.

“Sir knyght,” quod she, “I grant yow leif, *with*thy
Your name to me that 3e wil fpecify.”

“Madem, as 3it, futly I ne may
964 Duclar my name, one be no maner way;

He refuses for the present.

But I promyt, als faft as I haue tyme
Conuenient, or may vith-outen cryme,
I fhall;” and than the lady faith hyme tyll,
968 “And I, fchir knyght, one this condifcione will

She grants him leave, under the
proposed condition.

Grant yow leve, fo that ye oblift bee

For to Return, as ye haue laid to me.”
Thus thei accord, the lady goith to rest,
972 The fone discending clofit in the vest;
The ferd day was dewyfit for to bee
Betuex the oftis of the affemlee.

And galiot Richt arly by the day,
976 Ayane the feld he can his folk aray;
Galiot assembles 40,000 fresh
men.
And fourty thoufand armyt men haith he,
That war not at the othir affemlee,
Commandit to the batell for to gon;
980 “And I my-felf,” *quod* he, “shal me difpone
On to the feild azaine the thrid day;
Whar of this were we shal the end affay.”

Arthur also provides his men
for the field.

ANd arthuris folk that come one euery fyd,
984 He for the feld can them for to prouide,
Wich ware to few azaine the gret affere
Of galiot 3it to fulten the were.

The knights of Melyhalt join
him.

The knyghtis al out of the cete roß
988 Of melyholt, and to the femble gois.

The lady secretly provides
Lancelot with a red courser, and
a shield and spear, both red
also.

And the lady haith, in to facret wyß,
Gart for hir knyght and prefoner dewyß
In red al thing, that ganith for the were;

992 His curfeir red, fo was boith fcheld *and* fpere.
And he, to qwham the prefone hath ben fmart,
With glaid defir apone his curfour ftart;

He rides towards the field, and
halts in a plain by the river-side.

Towart the feld anon he gan to ryd,
996 *And* in o plan houit one reuer syde.

LOT ENCOURAGES HIMSELF.

This knycht, the wich that long haith ben *in* cag,

Lancelot is encouraged, seeing
the blithe morn, the mead, the
river, the green woods, and the
knights and banners.

He grew in to o frefch *and* new curage,
Seing the morow blythfull and amen,
1000 The med, the Reuer, and the vodus gren,
The knychtis in [ther] armys them arayinge,

[Fol. 13 b.]

The baneris ayaine the feld displayng,
His 3outh in ftrenth and in profperytee,

²⁴ May we read “diuerfytee”?

1004 *And* fyne of luft the gret aduerfytee. ²⁴
Thus in his *thocht* remembryng at the laft,

Casting his eyes aside, he sees
the queen looking over a
parapet.

Efterward one fyd he gan his Ey to caft,

²⁵ MS. “abertes.”

Whar our a bertes ²⁵ lying haith he sen
1008 Out to the feld lukiſg was the qwen;
Sudandly with that his goft aſtart

Love catches him by the heart.

Of loue anone haith caught hyme by the hart;
Than faith he, “How long ſhall It be ſo,
1012 Loue, at yow ſhall wirk me al this wo?

Apone this wyß to be Infortunat,
Hir for to *ferue* the wich thei no thing wate
What sufferance I in hir wo endure,
1016 Nor of my wo, nor of myne aduenture?
And I wnworthy ame for to attane
To hir *presens*, nor dare I noght complane.

He counsels his heart to help
itself at need,

Bot, hart, fen at yow knawith fhe is here,
1020 That of thi lyue and of thi deith is ftere,
Now is thi tyme, now help thi-felf at neid,
And the dewod of euery point of dred,

to forego cowardice,

That cowardy be none In to the señ,
1024 Fore and yow do, yow knowis thi peyne, I weyn;
Yow art wnable euer to attane
To hir mercy, or cum be ony mayne.

and to deserve her thanks or die.

Tharfor y red hir thonk at yow differue,
1028 Or in hir *presens* lyk o knyght to fterf.”

LD KNIGHT'S TRANCE.

Confused with a heavy thought,
With that confutit *with* an hewy thoht,
Wich ner his deith ful oft tyme haith hyme focht,
Deuoydit was his spritis and his goft,
1032 He wift not of hyme-felf nor of his oft;

he [sits] on his horse as still as
stone.

Bot one his horß, als ftil as ony fton.
When that the knyghtis armyt war ilkon,

The bugles are blown, and the
knights are ready on horseback,
20,000 in number.

To warnnyng them vp goith the bludy fown,

1036 And euery knyght vpon his horß is bown;
Twenty thoufand armyt men of were.
The king that day he wold non armys bere;
His batellis ware devyfit euerilkon,

They are forbidden to cross the
fords, but cannot be restrained.

1040 And them forbad out our the furdys to gon.
Bot frome that thei ther ennemys haith sen,
In to fuch wys thei couth them noght fulsteñ;

[Fol. 14.]

Bot ovr thei went vithouten more delay,
1044 And can them one that oyer sid affay.

The red knyght still halting by
the ford, a herald seizes his
bridle, and bids him awake.

The red knyght still in to his hewy thought
Was hufyng 3it apone the furd, *and* noght
Wift of hime self; with that a harrold com,
1048 And fone the knyght he be the brydill nom,
Saying, “awalk! It is no tyme to flep;
Your worfchip more expedient vare to kep.”
No word he fpak, fo prikith hyme the fmart
1052 Of hevynes, that ftood vnto his hart.

Two shrews next approach; one
takes his shield off his neck,

Two fcrewis cam with that, of quhich [that] oñ
The knyghtis fheld rycht frome his hals haith toñ;

the other casts water at his
ventayle, which causes him to
wink, and arouse himself.

That vthir watter takith atte laft,
1056 And in the knyghtis wentail haith It caft;
When that he felt the vatter that vas cold,
He wonk, and gan about hyme to behold,
And thinkith how he fum-quhat haith myfgoñ.
1060 With that his fpere In to his hand haith ton,

He goes to the field, and sees
the first-conquest king.

Goith to the feild *withouten* vordis more;
So was he vare whare that there cam before,
O manly man he was in to al thing,
1064 And clepit was the ferft-conquest king.
The Red knyght *with* [the] spuris smat the fted,
The tother cam, that of hyme hath no drede;

They meet.

With ferß curag ben the knyghtis met,
1068 The king his spere apone the knyght hath set,
That al in peciß flaw in to the felde;

The red knight, though
shieldless, overthrows his foe.

His hawbrek helpit, suppos he had no scheld.
And he the king in to the scheld haith ton,
1072 That horß and man boith to the erd ar gon.

The shrew restores his shield.

Than to the knyght he cummyth, that haith tan
His fheld, to hyme deliuerith It ayane,
Beliching hyme that of his Ignorance,
1076 That knew hyme nat, as takith no grewance.
The knyght his sche[l]d but mor delay haith tak,
And let hyme go, and no thing to hyme fpak.

²⁶ MS. "thei," altered to "thee," which is still wrong.

Than thei the ²⁶ wich that fo at erth haith fen

The men of the first-conquest
king come to the rescue.

1080 Ther lord, the ferft-conquest king, y meñ,
In haift thei cam, as that thei var agrevit,
And manfully thei haith ther king Releuit.

[A]nd Arthuris folk, that lykith not to byde,
1084 In goith the spuris in the ftedis syde;

[Fol. 14 b.]

To-giddir thar affemblit al the oft:
At whois meting many o knycht was loft.

The battle was right cruel to
behold.

The batell was richt crewell to behold,
1088 Of knychtis wich that haith there lyvis zolde.
One to the hart the spere goith throw the scheld,
The knychtis gaping lyith in the feld.
The red knycht, byrnyng in loues fyre,
1092 Goith to o knycht, als fwift as ony vyre,
The wich he perfit through *and* through the hart;

The red knight loses his spear,
but draws his sword, and roams
the field like a lion.

The spere is went; *with* that anon he start,
And out o fuerd in to his hond he tais;
1096 Lyk to o lyone in to the feld he gais,
In to his Rag smyting to and fro
Fro sum the arm, fro sum the nek in two,
Sum in the feild lying is in fwoun,

Some he cleaves to the belt.

1100 And sum his fuerd goith to the belt al douñe.
For qwhen that he beholdith to the qwen,
Who had ben thore his manhed to haue sen,
His doing in to armys and his myght,
1104 Shwld fay in world war not fuch o wight.

His fellows take comfort from
his deeds,

His falouschip siche comfort of his dede
Haith ton, that thei ther ennemys ne dreid;
But can them-self ay manfoly conten
1108 In to the ftour, that hard was to fuften;

though Galiot's host was a
surpassing multitude.

For galyot was O pafing multitude
Of prewit men in armys that war gude,
The wich can *with* o fresch curag affaill
1112 Ther ennemys that day In to batell;

Had it not been for the manhood
of the red knight, Arthur's folk
had been in peril.

That ne ware not the vorfchip *and* manhede
Of the red knyght, in perell and in dreid
Arthuris folk had ben, vith-outen vere;
1116 Set thei var good, thei var of smal powere.

JE BEHOLDS THE RED KNIGHT.

Gawane is led to the parapet,
And gawan, wich gart bryng hyme-felf befor
To the bertes, set he was vondit sore,
Whar the qwen vas, and whar that he mycht see
1120 The manere of the oft and affemble;
And when that he the gret manhed haith sen

and saith to the queen, that none
ever did better than yon red
knight.

Of the red knyght, he faith one to the qwen,
“Madem, 3one knyght in to the armys Rede,
1124 Nor neuer I hard nore faw in to no fted
O knyght, the wich that in to fchortar fpace
In armys haith mor forton nore mor grace;
Nore bettir doith boith with fper and fcheild,

[Fol. 15.]

1128 He is the hed and comfort of our feild.”

The queen prays for Lancelot.

“Now, *fir*, I traift that neuer more vas fen
No man in feild more knyghtly hyme *conten*;
I pray to hyme that euery thing hath cure,
1132 Saif hyme fro deth or wykit aduenture.”

The field was perilous on both
sides,

The feild It was *rycht* *perellus* and *strong*
On both the *fydis*, and *continewit* long,

from early morn till the sun had
gone down.

Ay from the lone the *varldis* face gan licht
1136 Whill he was gone *and* *cumyne* vas the *nycht*;
And than o forß thei *mycht* It not alstart,
On euery *fyd* behouit them depart.

Every knight then returns home,
and the red knight privily goes
back to the city.

The feild is don and ham goith euery *knycht*,
1140 And prevaly, unwift of any wicht,
The way the red *knycht* to the cete taiis,
As he had hecht, *and* in his *chambre* gais.
When arthure hard how the *knycht* Is gon,
1144 He blamyt fore his lordis *euerilk*-one;
And oft he haith remembrit in his thoght,

Arthur, seeing the multitude of
Galiot's men, recalls his dream,
saying,

What multitud that galiot had broght;
Seing his folk that ware so ewil arayt,
1148 In to his mynd he ftondith al affrayt,

And faith, “I traift ful futh It fal be founde
My drem Richt as the clerkis gan expounde;

“My men now fail me at need.”

For why my men fail 3eis now at neid,
1152 My-felf, my londe, in perell and in dreide.”

¶ PROPOSES A TRUCE.

Galiot tells his council

And galiot vpone hie worfchip set,
And his confell anon he gart be fet,
To them he faith, “with arthur weil 3e see
1156 How that It ftant, and to qwhat degre,
A3anis ws that he is no poware;

that there is no honour in
conquering Arthur,

Wharfor, me think, no worfchip to ws ware
In conqueryng of hyme, nor of his londe,
1160 He haith no ftrenth, he may ws not vithftonde.
Wharfor, me think It beft is to delay,

and proposes a twelvemonth's
truce.

And refput hyme for a tuelmoñeth day,
Whill that he may affemble al his myght;
1164 Than is mor worfchip a3anis hyme to ficht;”
And thus concludit thoght hyme for the beft.
The very knyghtis paſſing to there Reft;
Of melyholt the ladeis knyghtis ilkone
1168 Went home, and to hir presens ar thei gon;

The lady of Melyholt asks her
knights who hath won most
honour.

At qwhome ful lone than gan fcho to Inquere,
And al the maner of the oftis till spere;
How that It went, and in what maner wyß,
1172 Who haith moſt worfchip, *and* who is moſt to pryß?

[Fol. 15 b.]

“Madem,” *quod* thei, “O knyght was In the feild,

They reply, that a red knight
had exceeded all others.

Of Red was al his armour and his fheld,
Whois manhed can al otheris to exced,
1176 May nan report in armys half his deid;
Ne wor his worschip, shortly to conclud,
Our folk of help had ben al destitud.
He haith the thonk, the vorschip in hyme lyis,
1180 That we the feld defendit in sich wyß.”

The lady wonders if her
prisoner is meant.

The lady thane one to hir-felf haith thocht,
“Whether Is 3one my presonar, ore noght?
The futhfastneß that shal y wit onon.”

DY VISITS LANCELOT.

1184 When euery wight vn to ther Rest war gon,

She calls her cousin,
She clepith one hir cwfynes ful nere
Wich was to hir most speciall and dere,
And faith to hir, “qwheyar if yone bee
1188 Our presoner, my consell Is we see.”

who takes a torch, and they go
to the stable,

With that the maden In hir hand hath ton
O torche, and to the stable ar thei gon;

and find his steed wounded.

And fond his sted lying at the ground,
1192 Wich wery was, ywet *with* mony wounde.
The maden faith, “vpone this horß is fen,
He in the place quhar strokis was hath beñ;
And 3hit the horß It is *nocht* wich that hee
1196 Furth *with* hyme hade;”—the lady laid, “*per* dee,

He vfyt haith mo horß than one or two;

Next they view his armour,

I red one to his armys at we go.”

Tharwith one to his armys ar thei went;

and find his hauberk rent, and
his shield frushed all to naught.

1200 Thei fond his helm, thei fond his hawbrek rent,

Thei fond his scheld was fruschit al to nocht;

At schort, his armour In sich wyß was vrocht

In euery place, that no thing was left haill,

1204 Nore neuer eft accordith to bataill.

They think he has well used his
armour.

Than faith the lady to hir cufyneß,

“What fal we lay, what of this mater geß?”

“Madem, I lay, thei have nocht ben abwsyt;

1208 He that them bur schortly he has them vfyt.”

“That may 3e lay, suppos the best that lewis,

Or most of worfchip in til armys prewis,

Or 3hit haith ben in ony tyme beforñ,

1212 Had them in feld in his maft curag bornñ.”

They next visit the knight
himself,

“Now,” quod the lady, “will we paß, and see

The knyght hyme-self, and ther the futh may we

²⁷ “then” (?).

[Fol. 16.]

Knaw of this thing.” Incontynent them ²⁷ both

1216 Thir ladeis vn to his chambre goith.

who was now asleep.

The knyght al wery fall yng was on flep;

This maden passith In, *and* takith kep.

The lady’s cousin observes his
breast and shoulders bloody, his
face hurt, and his fists swollen.

Sche fauch his breft *with* al his fchowderis bare,
1220 That bludy war and woundit her and thare;
His face was al to-hurt and al to-fchent,
His newis fwellyng war and al to-Rent.
Sche fmylyt a lyt, and to hir lady laid,
1224 “It femyth weill this knyght hath ben affaid.”

LDY IS LOVE-SMITTEN.

The lady next observes him,
The lady fauch, and rewit in hir thoght
The knyghtis worfchip wich that he haith vroght.

and is smitten to the heart by
the dart of love,

In hire Remembrance loues fyre dart
1228 *With* hot defyre hir fmat one to the hart;
And then a quhill, *with*-outen wordis mo,
In to hir mynd thinking to and fro,
She ftudeit fo, and at the laft abraid

and prays her cousin to draw
aside, while she kisses the
knight.

1232 Out of hir thocht, and fudandly thus laid,

²⁸ MS. “alyt.”

“*With*-draw,” *quod* fhe, “one fyd a lyt ²⁸ the lyght,
Or that I paß that I may kyß the knyght.”

USIN REPROVES HER.

Her cousin reproves her,
“Madem,” *quod* fche, “what is It at 3e meñ?
1236 Of hie worfchip our mekill have 3e señ
So sone to be fupprifit *with* o thoght.

lest the knight should awake.

What is It at 3he think? *prefwm* 3e noght
That if yon knyght wil walkin, and *perfaif*,
1240 He fhaf yarof no thing bot ewill confaif;

In his entent Ruput yow therby
The ablare to al *lychtneß* and foly?
And blam the more al vtheris in his mynd,
1244 If your gret wit in sich defire he fynde?”

The lady replies.

“Nay,” *quod* the lady, “no thing may I do
For sich o *knycht* may be defam me to.”

Her cousin next argues the
point;

“Madem, I wot that for to loue yone *knycht*,
1248 Confidir his fame, his worschip, and his mycht;
And to begyne as worschip wil dewyß,
Syne he ayaine mycht lowe yow one such wyß,
And hold yow for his lady and his loue,
1252 It war to yow no maner of Reprwe.

“What if he loves another?”

But quhat if he appetit be and thret
His hart to lowe, and ellis whar y-fet?
And wel y wot, madem, if It be so,
1256 His hart hymne sal not suffir to loue two,

[Fol. 16 b.]

For noble hart wil have no dowbilneß;
If It be so, 3he tyne yowr low, I geß;
Than is your-self, than is your loue Refulit,
1260 Your fam is hurt, your gladneß is conclufit.
My confell is, therefore, you to absten
Whill that to yow the werray *Rycht* be señ
Of his entent, the wich ful son 3he may
1264 Have knowlag, If yow lykith to affay.”

She persuades the lady to return
to her chamber, without further
delay.

So mokil to hir lady haith she vroght
That at that tyme she haith Returnyt hir thocht,
And to hir chambre went, *withouten* more,

1268 Whar loue of new affaith hir ful sore.
So well long thei speking of the knyght,

Her cousin labours to expel her
love for Lancelot from her
thoughts, but her labour is in
vain.

Hir cufynace hath don al at fhe mycht
For to expel that thing out of hir thocht;
1272 It wil not be, hir labour Is for nocht.
Now leif we hir In to hir neweft pan,
And to arthur we wil retwrn agañ.

EXPLICIT PRIMUS LIBER, INCIPIT SECUNDUS.

R'S GREAT ANXIETY.

[BOOK II.]

Night.

The cloudy nyght, wndir whois obfcure
1276 The reft and quiet of euery criatur
Lyith fauf, quhare the goft *with* befyneß
Is occupiit, *with* thoghtfull hewynes;
And, for that thocht furth fchewing vil his mycht,
1280 Go fare-wel reft and quiet of the nycht.

Arthur cannot rest.

Artur, I meyne, to whome that reft is nocht,
But al the nycht fupprifit is with thocht;
In to his bed he turnyth to and fro,
1284 Remembryng the apperans of his wo,
That is to fay, his deith, his confufioun,
And of his realme the opin diftruccioun.

That in his wit he can no thing provide,
1288 Bot tak his forton thar for to abyd.

The sun goeth up.

Vp goith the fon, vp goith the hot morow;
The thoughtful king al the nyght to forow,

[Fol. 17.]

That fauch the day, vpon his feit he start,

Arthur goeth forth.

1292 And furth he goith, diftrublit in his hart.
A quhill he walkith in his pensyf goft,

He hears that a clerk has
arrived,

So was he ware thar cummyne to the oft
O clerk, with whome he was aqwynt befor,
1296 In to his tyme non better was y-bore;
Of qwhois com he gretly vas Reiofit,
For in to hyme sum comfort he supposit;

between whom and himself
there was a hearty affection.

Betuex them was one hartly affeccioune.
1300 Non orderis had he of Relegioun,
Famus he was, and of gret excellence,

He was expert in the seven
sciences,

And rycht expert in al the vij. science;
Contemplatif and chaft in gouernance,

and was named Amytans.

1304 And clepit was the maifter amytans.
The king befor his palzoune one the gren,
That knew hyme well, *and* haith his cummyn feñ,

Arthur welcomes him.

Velcummyt hyme, and maid hyme rycht gud chere,

INS REPROVES ARTHUR.

1308 And he agan, agrewit as he were,

He reckes nothing of Arthur's
salutation.

Saith, "nothir of thi falofing, nor the,
Ne rak I *nocht*, ne charg I *nocht*," *quod* hee.

The king inquires what trespass
he has committed.

Than *quod* the king, "maifter, *and* for what why
1312 Ar ze agrewit? or quhat treffpas have I
Commytit, so that I shal yow disples?"

He replies, "It is not against me,
but against thyself.

Quod he, "no thing It is ayane myn eß,
But only *contrare* of thi-felf alway;
1316 So fare the courß yow passith of the way.

Thy ship is almost drowned in
the whirlpool.

Thi schip, that goth apone the stormy vall,
Ney of thi careldis in the fwelf it fall,
Whar she almost is in the *perell* drent;
1320 That is to say, yow art so far myfwent
Of wykitneß vpone the vrechit dans,

²⁹ So in MS. Is it necessary to alter it to "strong"?

That yow art fallyng in the storng ²⁹ vengans

That is, God's wrath shall soon
devour thee.

Of goddis wreth, that shal the fon deuour;
1324 For of his strok approchit now the hour
That boith thi Ringe, thi ceptre, *and* thi crowñ,
Frome hie estat he smyting shal adoune.
And that accordith well, for in thi *thocht*

Because thou knowest Him not,
who set thee up in this high
estate,

1328 Yow knawith not hyme, the wich that haith the wrocht,
And fet the vp in to this hie estat
From powert; for, as the-felwyne wat,

It cummyth al bot only of his myght,
1332 And not of the, nor of thi elderis Richt
To the difcending, as in heritage,

though not begotten in
spousage.

For yow was not byget in to spoulag.

[Fol. 17 b.]

Wharfor yow aucht his bidding to obferf,
1336 And at thy mycht yow fhuld hyme pleß *and* ferf;
That dois yow nat, for yow art fo confuffit
With this fals world, that thow haith hyme Refufit,
And brokine haith his reul and ordynans,
1340 The wich to the he gave in gouernans.

RANNY OF KINGS.

He made thee king,
He maid the king, he maid the gouernour,
He maid the fo, and fet in hie honour
Of Realmys and of [diuerß] peplis fere;
1344 Efter his loue thow fhuld them Reul *and* ftere,
And wnopprefsit kep in to Iuftice,
The wykit men and pwnyce for ther wice.
Yow dois no thing, bot al in the *contrare*,

and thou sufferest thy people to
fare ill.

1348 And fuffrith al thi puple to forfare;
Yow haith non Ey but one thyne awn delyt,
Or quhat that plesing fhall thyne appetyt.
In the defalt of law and of Iuftice,
1352 Wndir thi hond is fufferyt gret fuppriß
Of fadirleß, and modirleß alfo,
And wedwis ek fuftenit mekill wo.

The poor are oppressed.
With gret myfchef opprefsit ar the pure;
1356 And thow art cauß of al this hol Iniure,

Whar-of that god a raknyng fal craf
At the, and a fore Raknyng fal hafe;
For thyne estat is gewyne to Redreß
1360 Thar ned, and kep them to rychtwyneß;
And thar is non that ther complantis heris;
The mychty folk, and ek the flattereris
Ar cheif with the, and doith this oppreßioun;

If they complain, it is their
confusion.

1364 If thai complen, It is ther confußioun.
And daniell faith that who doith to the pure,
Or faderleß, or modirleß, Enlure,
Or to the puple, that ilke to god doth hee;
1368 And al this harme fuftenit Is throw the.
Yow sufferith them, oppreßith *and* anoyith;
So yow art cauß, throw the thei ar diftroyth;
Than, at thi mycht, god fo diftroys yow.

What wilt thou do, when God
destroys sinners off the visage
of the earth?

1372 What ſhal he do azane? quhat ſhal yow,
When he diftroys by vengeance of his fuerd
The ſynaris fra the vysagis of the Erde?
Than vtraly yow ſhall diftroyt bee;
1376 And that Richt weill apperis now of thee,
For yow allon byleft art folitere;

Solomon ſaith, ‘Wo to him who
is left alone! He hath no help.’

And the wyß ſalamon can duclar,
‘Wo be to hyme that is byleft alone,

[Fol. 18.]

1380 He haith no help;’ so Is thi forton goñe;
For he is callit, *with* quhom that god is nocht,
Allone; and ſo thi wykitneß haith wrocht
That god hyme-ſelf he is bycummyn thi fo,

Thou hast lost thy people's
hearts,
1384 Thi pupleis hartis haith thow tynt albo;
Thi wykitneß thus haith the maid alon,
That of this erth thi fortune Is y-goñ.
Yow mone thi lyf, yow mone thi vorfchip tyne,
and shalt come to death that
hath no end."
1388 And eft to deth that neuer fhal haf fyne."

R ASKS ADVICE.

"**M**aister," quod he, "of yowre beneuolens,
Y yow befech that tueching myn offens,
3he wald wichfaif your confell to me If
Arthur asks how he shall
amend,
1392 How I fal mend, and ek her-eftir leif."
"Now," quod the maister, "and I have merwell qwhy
Yow askith confail, and wil in non affy,
Nor wyrk thar-by; and 3hit yow may In tym,
1396 If yow lykith to amend the cryme."
"3his," faith the king, "and futhfastly I will
and promises to fulfil his
bidding.
3our ordynans in euery thing fulfyll."
"And if the list at confail to abide,
The master replies, "Thou must
first dread the Lord.
1400 The remed of thi harme to prouyde—
Firft, the begyning is of fapiens,
To dreid the lord and his magnificens;
And what thow haith in contrar hyme ofendit,
30 MS. "amendit."
1404 Whill yow haith mycht, of fre defir amend it; 30

Repent thy guilt.

Repent thi gilt, repent thi gret trefpaß,
And remembir one goddis richwyfneß;
How for to hyme that wykitneß anoyt,
1408 And how the way of fynaris he diftroit;
And if ye lyk to ryng wnder his peß,
Ye wengans of his mychty hond yow feß,
This fchalt yow do, if yow wil be perfit.
1412 Firft, mone yow be penitent and contrit
Of euery thing that tuechith thi confiens,
Done of fre will, or 3hit of neglygens.

Thy need requireth full
contrition.

Thi neid requirith ful contretioune,
1416 Princepaly with-out concludioun;
With humble hart and goftly byfyneß,
Syne fhalt yow go deuotly the confeß

Confess to some holy confessor.

Ther-of vnto fum haly confeffour,
1420 That the wil confail tueching thin arour;
And to fulfill his will and ordynans,

Do penance, and amend all
wrong.”

In fatiffaccione and doing of penans,
And to amend al wrang and al Iniure,
1424 By the ydone til euery Creature;

[Fol. 18 b.]

If yow can In to thi hart fynde,
Contretioune well degeft In to thi mynd.
Now go thi weie, for if it leful were,
1428 Confessioun to me, I fhuld It here.”

R CONFESSES HIS SINS,

Arthur tries to remember every
sin done since his years of

innocence,

Than arthur, Richt obedient *and* mek,
In to his wit memoratyve can feik
Of euery gilt wich that he can pens,
1432 Done frome he passith the 3eris of Innocens;
And as his maister hyme commandit hade,

and made his confession with
lamentable cheer.

He goith and his confessione haith he maad
Richt deuotly with lementable chere;
1436 The maner wich quho lykith for to here
He may It fynd In to the holl romans,
Of confessione o pasing *cercumstans*.
I can It not, I am no confessor,
1440 My wyt haith ewill confat of that labour,
Quharof I wot I aucht repent me fore.
The king wich was confessor, what is more,
Goith and til his maister tellith hee,
1444 How euery fyne In to his awn degree
He shew, that mycht occurryng to his mynde.

“Leftest thou aught behind,”
quoth the master, “about Ban,
king of Albanak, and his
disinherited wife?”

“Now,” *quod* the maister, “left thow aght behynde
Of albanak the vorshipful king ban,
1448 The wich that was in to my seruice flane,
And of his wif disherit eft also?
Bot of ther sone, the wich was them fro,

³¹ MS. apparently has “srpek;” but a comparison with line 1543 shews that the apparent *r* is due to the meeting of two slight flourishes belonging to the *s* and *p*.

Ne spek ³¹ y not;”—the king in his entent
1452 Abasyt was, and furthwith is he went

The king again confesses, and

returns,
Azane, and to his confeffour declarith;
Syne to his maifter he ayane Reparith,

GAIN ASKS FOR ADVICE.

To quhome he faith, “I aftir my cunyng
1456 Your ordinans fulfillit in al thing;
And now right hartly y befeich and prey,
3he wald *with*schaif sum thing to me lay,

prays for comfort,
That may me comfort in my gret dreid,
1460 And how my men ar falzet in my Neid,

and inquires about his dream.
And of my dreame, the wich that is fo dirk.”

The master saith, “If thou art
bound to work by my counsel,
This maifter faith, “and thow art bound to virk

³² This line (though it should not) begins with an illuminated letter.

³² **A**T my confail, and if yow has maad
1464 Thi confeffione, as yow before hath laid,
And in thi conciens thinkith *per*feuere,
As I *pre*fume that thow onon fhalt here
That god hyme-felf fhall fo for y^e *prouide*,
thou shalt abide in thy kingdom.
1468 Thow fhall Remyne and In thi Ring abyde.

[Fol. 19.]

And why thi men ar falzet At this nede,
At fhort this is the cauß, fhalt yow *nocht* dred,
Fore thow to gode was frawart and *perwert*;
1472 Thi ryngne and the he *thocht* for to subwart;
And yow fal knaw na power may recift,
In contrar quhat god lykith to affi[f]t.

DERIVE THEIR POWER FROM GOD.

Strength of victory cometh from
God only.

The vertw nore the strenth of victory
1476 It cummyth not of man, bot anerly
Of hyme, the wich haith euery strinth; *and* than,
If that the waiis pleffit hyme of man,
He shal have forß azane his ennemys.
1480 A-ryght agan apone the samyne vyß,

Whoso displeases Him shall be
subject to his enemies, as we
read in the Bible concerning the
Jews.

If he displeß vn to the lord, he shall
Be to his fais a subiet or a thrall,
As that we may In to the bible red,
1484 Tueching the folk he tuk hyme-felf to led
In to the lond, the wich he them byhicht.
Ay when thei 3hed in to his ways Richt,
Ther fois gon befor there fuerd to nocht;

When they wrought against
Him, they were so full of fear
that the sound of a falling leaf
made a thousand flee.

1488 And when that thei ayanis hyme hath vrocht,
Thei war so full of radur and disspare,
That of o leif fleing in the air,
The found of It haith gart o thousand tak
1492 At onys apone them-felf the bak,
And al ther manhed vterly foryhet;
Sich dreid the lord apone ther hartis set.
So shalt yow know no powar may withstond,
1496 Ther god hyme-felf hath ton the cauß on hond.

Thine own offence is the reason
why thy people fail thee.

And ye quhy stant in thyne awn offenses,
That al thi puple falzhet off defens.
And sum ar falzeing magre ther entent;

1500 Thei ar to quhom thow yewyne hath thi rent,
Thi gret Reuard, thi richeß and thi gold,
And cheriffith and held in thi houshold.
Bot the moft part ar falzheit the at wyll,

Thou hast shewn some of them
unkindness,

1504 To quhome yow haith wnkyndneß fchawin till;
Wrong and inlure, and ek defalt of law,
And pwnyfyng of qwhich that thei ftand aw;
And makith feruice but reward or fee,
1508 Syne haith no thonk bot fremmytneß of the.
Such folk to the cummyth bot for dred,
Not of fre hart the for to help at nede.
And what awalith owthir fheld or fper,
1512 Or horß or armoure according for ye were,

[Fol. 19 b.]

Vith-uten man them for to ftere and led?

and a man that wanteth heart is
dead.

And man, yow wot, that vantith hart is ded,
That in to armys feruith he of noght;
1516 A cowart oft ful mekil harm haith vroght.
In multitude nore zhit in confluens
Of fich, is nowther manhed nore defens.

Thou hast so conducted thyself
as to lose all thy people's hearts.

And fo thow hath the rewlyt, that almoft
1520 Of al thi puple the hartis ben ylost;
And tynt richt throw thyne awn myfgouernans
Of auerice and of thyne errogans.

What is a prince without
honour?

What is o prince? quhat is o gouernoure
1524 *Withouten* fame of worfchip and honour?
What is his mycht, fuppos he be A lorde,

If that his folk fal *nocht* to hyme accorde?

Can he by himself sustain his
kingdom, by serving his own
appetite?

May he his Rigne, may he his holl Empire
1528 Suften al only of his owne defyre,
In ferwyng of his wrechit appetit
Of awerice and of his awn delyt,
And hald his men, wncherift, in thraldome?

His oppression of his people
consumes his high estate, and
makes other kings war on them.

¶ KINGS ARE PUNISHED.

1532 Nay! that shal fone his hie estat consome.

³³ “king” (?).

For many o knyght³³ therby is broght ydoune,
All vtraly to ther confusioune;
For oft it makith vther kingis by
1536 To wer on them In traft of victory;
And oft als throw his peple is distroyth,
That fyndith them agrewit or anoyth;

God also punishes their vices.”

And god also oft *with* his awn fwerd,
1540 Punyfith ther wyfis one this erd.
Thus falith not o king but *gouernans*,
Boith realme and he goith one to myfchans.”

¶ AGE FROM GALIOT.

Meanwhile, the king of a
hundred knights and the first-
conquest king come from
Galiot,

AS thai war thus speking of this thinge,
1544 Frome galiot cam two knyghtis to the king;

That one the king of hundereth knyghtis was;

³⁴ MS. “kinghe,” a spelling due to confusion with “knight.” See [l. 1533](#).

That other to nome the fyrst-conqueft king ³⁴ has,

At firft that galyot conquerit of one.

1548 The nereft way one to the king thei gon,

And vp he roß, as he that wel couth do

Honor, to quhome that It afferith to;

And 3hit he wift not at thei kingis were;

³⁵ “then” (?).

1552 So them ³⁵ thei boith and vyth rycht knyghtly cher

Reuerendly thei faluft hyme, and thane

and the former delivers his
message, to the effect that

The king of hunder knyghtis he began

And laid hyme, “fir, to 3ow my lord ws fende,

[Fol. 20.]

1556 Galiot, whilk bad ws fay he wende,

That of this world the vorthieft king wor 3he,

Greteft of men and of awtoritee.

Galiot wonders at the feebleness
of Arthur’s folk,

Wharof he has gret wonder that 3he ar

1560 So feble cummyne In to his contrare,

For to defend your cuntre *and* your londe,

And knowith well 3he may hyme nocht *withftonde*.

Wharfor he thinkith no worfchip to conquere,

1564 Nore in the weris more to *perfyuere*;

Confiddir yowr wakneß and yowr Indegens,

A3anis hyme as now to mak defens.

HE PROPOSED AND ACCEPTED.

and is willing to grant a year’s
truce,

Wharfore, my lord haith grantit by vs here

1568 Trewis to yhow and refput for o 3here,

if Arthur will return to fight
against him in a year's time;

If that yhow lykith by the 3heris space
For to retwrn ayane In to this place,
Her to manteine yhour cuntre and *withftond*
1572 Hyme *with* the holl power of yhour lond.
And for the tyme the trewis shal endure,
Yhour cuntre and yhour lond he will affurre;
And wit 3he 3hit his powar is *nocht* here.
1576 And als he bad ws fay yhow by the yhere,

and desires to have the red
knight in his household.

The gud knyght wich that the Red armys bure
And in the feild maid the difcumfiture,
The whilk the flour of kny~~ch~~thed may be cold,
1580 He thinkith hyme to haue of his houshold.”
“Well,” quod the king, “I have hard quhat yhe fay,
But if god will, and ek if that I may,
In to sich wyß I think for to withftond,
1584 Yhour lord shal have no powar of my londe.”

Arthur rejoices at the truce,
Of this meßag the king Reioßing haß,
And of the trewis wich that grantit was,
Bot anoyt 3hit of the knyght was he,
1588 Wich thei awant to have in fuch dogre.
Ther leif thei tuk; and when at thei war gon,

³⁶ The initial T is illuminated.

which the master attributes to
God's providence, and exhorts
him, saying,

³⁶ **T**his maister faith, “how lykith god dispone!

Now may yhow se *and* futh is my recorde;
1592 For by hyme now is makith this accord;
And by non vthir worldly providens,

Sauf only grant of his bynewolans,
To fe if that the lykith to amend,
1596 And to prouid thi cuntre to defend.
Wharfor yow fhalt in to thi lond home fair,
And gowerne the as that I fhall declaire.

[Fol. 20 b.]

“First, serve God with humble
heart, and let the wand of law
pass through the land.

Firft, thi god with humble hart yow ferfe,
1600 And his comand at al thi mycht obferf;
And fyne, lat paß the ilk bleffit wonde
Of lowe *with mercy* Iuftly throw thi londe;
And y befeich—to quhome yow fal direke
1604 The rewle vpone, the wrangis to correk—
That yow be nocht in thi electioun blynde;
For writin It Is and yow fal trew It fynde.
That, be thei for to thonk or ellis blame,
1608 And towart god thi *part* fhall be the sam;
Of Ignorans fhalt yow nocht be excusit,
Bot in ther werkis forly be accusit,
For thow fhuld euer cheß apone fch wyß

○ CHOOSE JUDGES.

Thus shalt thou choose the
ministers of justice.

³⁷ MS. “mīfteris.”

1612 The *minīsteris* ³⁷ that rewill haith of Iustice:—
Firft, that he be defcuret til wnderftond
And lowe and ek the mater of the londe;
And be of mycht and ek Autoritee,
1616 (For puple ay *contempnith* low degre,)
And that of trouth he folow furth the way;
That is als mych as he louyth trewth alway,
And haitith al them the wich fal pas therfro.

1620 Syne, that he god dreid and lowe al-so.

Avoid avaricious and wrathful
men.

Of auerice be-war with the defyre,
And of hyme full of haftynes *and* fyre;
Be-war thar-for of malice and defire,
1624 And hyme also that lowith no medyre;
For al this abhominable was hold,
When Iuftice was in to the tymis olde.
For qwho that is of an of thir by-know,
1628 The left of them subuertith all the low,

³⁸ MS. "w Iustly."

And makith It w[n]Iustly ³⁸ to procede;

Eschew unfit men, for this shall
be thy meed in the day of
judgment.

Eschew tharfor, for this fal be thi meid
Apone the day when al thing goith aright,
1632 Whar none excuß hidyng schal ye lyght;
But he the Iug, that no man may fuffpek,
Euery thing ful Iuftly fal correk.
Be-war thar-with, as before have I told,
1636 And cheß them wyfly that thi low shal hold.
And als I will that it well oft be sen,
Richt to thi-self how thei thi low *conten*;

Be diligent to inquire how
judgment is given.

MUST BE JUST AND TRUE.

And how the Right, and how the dom is went,
1640 For to Inquer that yow be delygent.

[Fol. 21.]

And punyß for, for o thing shal yow know,
The most trespas is to subuert the low,
So that yow be not in thar gilt accufit,

1644 And frome the froit of bliffit folk refufit.

Visit every chief town
throughout the bounds of thy
kingdom.

And pas yow fhalt to euey chef toune,
Throw-out the boundis of thi Regioun
Whar yow fall be, that Iuftice be Elyk
1648 With-out diuifione baith to pur *and* ryk.
And that thi puple have [ane] awdiens
With thar complantis, and alfo thi *presens*;
For qwho his eris frome the puple ftekith,
1652 And not his hond in ther fupport furth rekith,
His dom fall be ful grewous & ful hard,
When he fal cry and he fal *nocht* be hard.

Give thine ears to the poor.
Wharfor thyne eris ifith to the pwre,
1656 Bot in redreß of ned, & not of *in*lure;
Thus fall thei don of Reffone & knawlag.

Kings, while minors, may be
excused;

But kingis when thei ben of tender ag,
Y wil not fay I traft thei ben excufit,
1660 Bot fchortly thei fall be far accufit,

but, when of age, they must
punish those that have wrested
justice.

When fo thei cum to yheris of Refone,
If thei tak not full contrifioun,
And pwnyß them that hath ther low myfgyit.
1664 That this is trouth it may not be denyit;
For vther ways thei fal them not difcharg,

³⁹ A blank space here occurs, just sufficient to contain one line.
[Excep thei pwnyß them that have the charg] ³⁹

One eftatis of ther realm, that fhold

⁴⁰ MS. "behold."

1668 *With*-in his 3outh fe that his low be hold. ⁴⁰

Temper justice with mercy.

And thus thow the, *with* mercy, kep alway
Of Iuftice furth the ilk bleffit way.

Be true and stable in thy words.

And of thi wordis beis trew and ftable,
1672 Spek not to mych, nore be not vareable.
O kingis word fhuld be o kingis bonde,
And laid It is, a kingis word fhuld ftond;
O kingis word, among our faderis old,
1676 Al-out more *precious* & more fur was hold
Than was the oth or feel of any wight;

A king should be the very light
of truth.

O king of trouth fuld be the werray lyght,
So treuth and Iuftice to o king accordyth.
1680 And als, as thir clerkis old recordith,

SHOULD CHERISH ALL MEN.

⁴¹ The initial I is illuminated; rather because there is here a change of subject than because it begins a new sentence.

⁴¹ **I**n tyme is larges and humilitee

Right well according vnto hie dugre,
And pleffith boith to god and man al-so;

[Fol. 21 b.]

1684 Wharfor I wil, *incontinent* thow go,
And of thi lond in euery *part* abide,
Whar yow gar fet and clep one euery fid
Out of thi cuntreis, and ek out of thi tovnis,

Invite thy dukes, earls, great
barons, thy poor knights, and
thy bachelors, and welcome
them severally.

1688 Thi dukis, erlis, and thi gret baronis,
Thi pur knyghtis, and thi bach[e]leris,
And them refauf als hartly as afferis,
And be them-felf yow welcum them ilkon:
1692 Syne, them to glaid and cheris, thee dispone
With festing and with humyll *contynans*.
Be not penfyve, nore proud in arrogans,

Keep company not with the rich
man only, but with the poor
worthy man also.

Bot *with* them hold in gladnes cumpany;
1696 Not with the Rich nor myghty anerly,
Bot with the pure worthi man also,
With them thow lit, *with* them yow ryd and go.
I say not to be our fameliar,
1700 For, as the moft philosfehur can duclar,

Yet remember that familiarity
breeds contempt.

To mych to oyß familiaritee
Contempnyng bryngith one to hie dugre;
Bot cherice them *with* wordis fair depaynt,
1704 So with thi pupelle fal yow the aquaynt.

Choose out of each district an
aged knight to be thy
counsellor.

Than of ilk cuntre wyfly yow enquere
An agit knyght to be thi consulere,
That haith ben hold in armys Richt famus,
1708 Wyß and difcret, & no thing Inwyus;
For there is non that knowith so wel, I-wyß,
O worthy man as he that worthi Is.

When thou hast sojourned long
in a place, then provide thee

with plenty of horses, armour,
gold, silver, and clothing;

MUST BE LIBERAL.

When well long haith yow fwiornyt in a place,
1712 And well acqueynt the *vith* thi puple has,
Than fhalt thow ordand & prowid the
Of horß and ek of armour gret plente;
Of gold, and filuer, tressore, and cleithing,
1716 And euery Riches that longith to o king;

and, before leaving, distribute
gifts liberally.

And when the lykith for to tak thi leif,
By largeß thus yow thi reward geif,
First to the pure worthy honorable,

1720 That is til armys and til manhed able;
(Set he be pur, 3hit worfchip in hyme bidith);

Give to the poor worthy man
the horse thou thyself ridest.

If hyme the horß one wich thi-felwyne Ridith,
And bid hyme that he Rid hyme for yhour lak;
1724 Syne til hyme gold and filuer yow betak;
The horß to hyme for worfchip and prowes,
The trefor for his fredome and larges.

[Fol. 22 a.]

If moft of Riches and of Cherifing;
1728 Eftir this gud knycht berith vitnefing.

Give to thy tenants and
vavasours easy hackneys,
palfries, and coursers.

Syne to thi tennandis & to thi wawafouris
If effy haknays, palfrais, and curfouris,
And robis flich as pleland ben and fair;
1732 Syne to thi lordis, wich at mychty aire,

Give to thy lords things strange
and uncouth.

As dukis, erlis, princis, and ek kingis,
Yow if them ftrang, yow if them vncouth thingis,
As diuerß iowellis, and ek preciouß ftonis,
1736 Or halkis, hundis, ordinit for the nonis,
Or wantone horß that can nocht stand in ftāble;
Thar giftis mot be fair and delitable.

Thus, firft vn to the vorthi pur yow if
1740 Giftis, that may ther pouerte Releif;
And to the rich iftis of plefans,
That thei be fair, fet nocht of gret fubftans;
For riches askith no thing bot delyt,
1744 And powert haith ay ane appetyt
For to support ther ned and Indigens:
Thus fhall yow if and makith thi difpens.

So, too, shall the queen give to
maidens and ladies,

And ek the quen, my lady, shalt also

1748 To madenis and to ladeis, quhar zhe go,

If, and cherið one the famyne wyß;

for all thy welfare lies in
liberality.

For in to largeß al thi welfar lyis.

And if thy giftis with sich *continans*

1752 That thei be sen ay gifyne *vith* plefans;

The wyß man fais, and futh it is approuit,

Thar is no thonk, thar is no ift alowit,

Bot It be ifyne In to sich manere,

Remember that the giver should
be as glad in his cheer as the
receiver.

1756 (That is to say, als glaid *in* to his chere),

As he the wiche the ift of hyme Refauith;

And do he not, the gifar is diffauith.

For who that iffis, as he not if wald,

1760 Mor *profit* war his ift for to *with-hald*;

His thonk he tynith, and his ift also.

Bot that thow ifith, if *with* boith two,

Give with both hand and heart
at once;

That is to say, *vith* hart and hand atonis;

1764 And so the wylman ay ye ift disponis.

Beith larg and iffis frely of thi thing;

for liberality is the treasure of a
king.

For largeß is the trefour of o king,

And not this other Iowellis nor this gold

1768 That is in to thi trefory *with-holde*.

[Fol. 22 b.]

Who gladly iffith, be vertew of larges

Whoso gives liberally, his

treasury increases.

His trefory encrefis of Richeß,
And fal azañe the mor al-out refawe.

AL KINGS ARE LOVED IN LIFE,

For the receiver shall place his
goods at the king's disposal,

1772 For he to quhome he 3ewith fall hawe,
Firft his body, fyne his hart with two,
His gudis al for to difpone also

who shall gain, moreover, both
worship and praise.

In his feruice; and mor atour he fhall
1776 Have O thing, and that is beft of all;
That is to fay, the worfchip and the loß
That vpone larges in this world furth goß.
And yow fhall knaw the lawbour & the preß
1780 In to this erth about the gret Richeß.

Is there any labour except for
meat and clothing? All the
remnant is for fame.

⁴² MS. "Is ony bout bot;" "bout" being defaced.

Is ony, bot ⁴² apone the cauß we see
Of met, of cloth, & of prosperitee?
All the remanant ftant apone the name
1784 Of purches, furth apone this worldis fame.
And well yow wot, in thyne allegians
Ful many Is, the wich haith fufficians
Of euery thing that longith to ther ned;
1788 What haith yow more, qwich [haith] them al to lede,
For al thi Realmys and thi gret Riches,
If that yow lak of worfchip the encreß?
Well leß, al-out; for efter thar eftate
1792 Thei have vorfchip, and kepith It al-gat;
And yow degradith al thyne hie dugree,
That fo fchuld fhynne In to nobelitee,

Through wys and throw the wrechitneß of hart.

COMMENDED AFTER DEATH.

Knowest thou not what shall be
thy part, when thou passest
away from this world?

⁴³ MS. has “by.”

1796 And knowis yow not what fall be ⁴³ thi part,
Out of this world when yow fal paß the courß?
Fair well, I-wyß! yow neuer fhall Recourß

⁴⁴ MS. has “subei^et.”

Whar no prince more fhall the subiet ⁴⁴ have,
1800 But be als dep in to the erd y-grave,

Virtue and honour will alone
remain.

Sauf vertew only and worfchip wich abidith;
With them the world apone the laif dewidith;

And if thy successor be liberal,
he will be commended of the
world;

And if he, wich fhall eftir the succed,
1804 By larges spend, of quhich that yhow had dreid,
He of the world comendit is and prifit,
And yow ftant furth of euery thing difpifit;
The puple faith and demyth thus of thee,
1808 “Now is he gone, a werray vrech was hee,
And he the wich that is our king and lord
Boith wertew haith & larges in accorde;
Welcum be he!” and fo the puple foundith.

[Fol. 23 a.]

1812 Thus through thi viß his wertew mor aboundith,
and his virtue will abound
through thy vice.

And his vertew the more thi wice furth fchawith.
Wharfor 3he, wich that princes ben y-knawith,
Lat not yhour vrechit hart so yhow dant,

1816 That he that *cummyth* next yhow may awant
To be mor larg, nore more to be *commendit*;

Riches well spent are the best
kept.

Best kepit Is the Riches well *dispendit*.

O 3he, the wich that kingis ben, fore fham

1820 Remembrith yhow, this world hath bot o naam[—]

Of good or ewill, efter 3he ar gone!

And wyfly tharfor cheffith yhow the toñ

Wich moft accordith to nobilitee,

1824 And knytith larges to yhour hie degre.

For qwhar that fredome In O prince Ringnis,

It bryngith In the victory of kingis,

And makith realmys and puple boith to dout,

⁴⁵ Or “subettis.”

1828 And subectis⁴⁵ of the cuntre al about.

¶ L KINGS WIN SUBJECTS,

Whoso will be a conqueror, let
him not reck to give largely.

And qwho that thinkith ben o conquerour,

Suppos his largeß fumquhat pas myfour,

Ne rak he nat, bot frely iffith ay;

1832 And as he wynyth, beis var al-way

To mych nor 3hit to gredy that he hold,

Wich fal the hartis of the puple colde.

Both love and fear spring from
liberality.

And low and radour *cummyth* boith two

1836 Of larges; Reid and 3he fal fynd It fo.

Alexander this lord the warld that wan,

Firft *with* the fuerd of larges he began,

Alexander gave so liberally,

And as he wynith ifith largely,

1840 He rakith No thing bot of cheuelry;

Wharfor of hyme fo paffith the Renown,

that many cities desired to have
such a lord,

That many o cetee, and many o ftrang towñ

Of his worfchip that herith the Recorde,

1844 Diffirith fo to haveing flich o lorde;

and offered themselves
peaceably to him, though they
were manly men of war.

And offerith them *with*-outen ftrok of fpere,

Suppos that thei war manly men of were,

But only for his gentilleß that thei

1848 Have hard; and fo he louit was al-way

For his larges, humilitee, and manhed,

With his awn folk, that neuermore, we Reid,

[Fol. 23 b.]

For al his weris nor his gret trawell,

1852 In al his tym that thei hyme onys fail;

Bot in his worfchip al thar befynes

Thei fet, and lewith in to no diftres;

Whar-throw the fuerd of victory he berith.

Many princes bear the palm of
victory, through liberality;

1856 And many prince full oft the palm werith,

As has ben hard, by largeß, of before,

In conqueringe of Rignis & of glore.

while miserliness hath made
realms desolate.

And wrechitnes Richt fo, in the contrar,

JUST ONES DESPOIL THEM.

1860 Haith Realmys maid ful defolat & bare,

And kingis broght down from ful hie eftat;

And who that Red ther old bukis, wat

The vicis lef, the wertew have in mynde,

1864 And takith larges In his awn kynd;

Choose the mean between
prodigality and avarice.

A-myð standing of the vicis two,
Prodegalitee and awerice also.
Wharfor her-of It nedith not to more,
1868 So mych ther-of haith clerkis vrit to-fore.

Whoso chooses to be liberal,
Bot who the wertw of larges & the law
Sal cheß, mot ned confidir well & know

must understand three things:
the *amount he has*, to *whom* he
giveth, and the *fit time* for
giving.

In to hyme-self, and thir thre wnderstande,
1872 The subltans first, the powar of his land,
Whome to he iffith, and the cauß wharfore,
The nedful tyme awatith euermore.
Kepith thir thre; for qwho that fal exced
1876 His rent, he fallith sodandly in nede.

(1) The king that becomes
indigent overthrows his
subjects.

And so the king, that on to myfter drowis,
His subiettis and his puple he our-thrawis,
And them dispolzeith boith of lond and Rent;
1880 So is the king, so is the puple schent.

For the voice of the oppressed
shrieketh up ceaselessly to
heaven;

For-quhi the woice It scrik[i]th vp ful ewyne
With-out abaid, and passith to the hewyne,
Whar god hyme-self refauith ther the crye
1884 Of the opprefioun and the teranny,

and God smiteth down with the
sword of vengeance.

And with the fuerd of wengans doun y-fmytith,
The wich that caruith al to for, and bitith,

And hyme diftroyth, as has ben hard or this
1888 Of euery king that wirkith lich o mys.

IE OF INJUSTICE AND FLATTERY.

For ther is few eschapith them, It fall

For God hath given the king the
wand of justice:

Boith vpon hyme & his succeffione fall;
For he forfuth haith ifyne hyme the wond

[Fol. 24 a.]

1892 To Iustefy and Reull in pece his lond,
The puple all submytit to his cure;
And he aȝan one to no creatur
Save only shall vn to his gode obey.

1896 And if he passith so far out of the wey,

and if he oppresses them whom
he should rule,

Them to oppreß, that he shuld reul & gid,
Ther heritag, there gwdis to dewide,
Ye, wnder whome that he most nedis stond,

God shall stretch His mighty
hand for correction.

1900 At correccioun sal strek his mychty hond,
Not euery day, bot shal at onys fall
On hyme, mayhap, and his succefcione all.

Herein, alas! is the blindness of
kings.

In this, allace! the blyndis of the kingis,
1904 And Is the fall of princis and of Rygnis.
The most wertew, the gret Intellegens,

The blessed token of a king's
wisdom is for him to restrain his
hand from his people's riches.

The bleffit tokyne of wyfdom and prudens
Iß, in o king, for to restren his honde
1908 Frome his pupleis Riches & ther lond.

Mot euery king have this wice in mynd
In tyme, and not when that he ned fynde!
And in thi larges beith war, I pray,

(2) Choose a *fitting time*.

1912 Of nedful tyme, for than is best alway.

(3) Take care to *whom* you give.

Awyß the ek quhome to that thow falt if,
Of there fam, and ek how that thei leif;

Let not the virtuous and the
vicious stand in the same
degree.

And of the wertws and wicious folk also,
1916 I the befeich dewidith well thir two,
So that thei stond *nocht* in[to] o degree;
Discreccioun fall mak the diuersitee,
Wich clepith the moder of al vertewis.

FLATTERERS SUCCEED WHEN KINGS ARE FOOLISH.

Beware of flattery.

1920 And beith war, I the befeich of this,
That is to say of flatry, wich that longith
To court, and al the kingis larges fongith.
The vertuouß man no thing thar-of refauith,
1924 The flattereris now so the king diffauith
And blyndith them that wot no thing, I-wyß,
When thei do well, or quhen thei do o myß;
And latith kingis oft til wnderstonde
1928 Thar vicis, and ek ye faltis of ther lond.
In to the realme about o king Is holde

A flatterer is worse than a storm
or a pestilence.

O flatterere were than is the stormys cold,
Or pestelens, and mor the realme anoyith;
1932 For he the law and puple boith distroyith.

[Fol. 24 b.]

Three things make flatterers in
favour.

And in to principall ben ther three thingis,
That cauffith flattereris ftonding *with* the kingis;

First, the blind ignorance of
kings.

And on, It is the blyndit Ignorans
1936 Of kingis, wich that hath no gouernans
To wnderftond who doith fich o myß;
But who that fareft fchewith hym, I-wyß,
Moft fuffifith and beft to his plefans.
1940 Wo to the realme that havith fich o chans!

Secondly, where a king is
vicious himself.

And fecundly, quhar that o king Is
Weciuß hyme-felf, he cheriffith, ywys,
Al them the wich that one to vicis foundith,
1944 Whar-throw that vicis and flattery ek aboundith.

Thirdly, where the king is so
foolish, that he knows their
flattery, yet withdraws from
reproving them.

The thrid, is the ilk fchrewit harmful wice,
Wich makith o king *within* hyme-felf fo nyce,
That al thar flattry and ther gilt he knowith
1948 In to his wit, and 3hit he hyme *with*-drowith
Them to repref, and of ther vicis he wot;
And this It is wich that difsemblyng hot,
That in no way accordith for o king.
1952 Is he not fet abuf apone his Ringne,
As fouerane his puple for to lede?

Why should a king spare to say
the truth?

Whi fchuld he fpare, or quhom of fchuld he dred
To fay the treuth, as he of Right is hold?
1956 And if fo ware that al the kingis wold,

When that his legis comytit ony wyce,
As beith not to schamful, nore to nyce,
That thei prefume that he is negligent,

He should reprove without
dissembling, as it is fitting.

1960 But als far as he thinkith that thei myß-went,
But difsemblyng repewith as afferis;
And pwnice them quhar pwnyfling Requeris,
Sauf only mercy in the tyme of ned.

1964 And so o king he schuld his puple led,
That no trefpaß, that cummyth in his way,
Shuld paß his hond wne-pwnift away;
Nore no good deid in to the samyn degree,
1968 Nore no wertew, fuld wn-Reuardid bee.

Then flattery, that now is high,
should be low.

Than flattry shuld, that now is he, be low,
And wice from the kingis court *with*-drow;
His minifteris that shuld the Iuftice reull,
1972 Shuld kep well furth of quiet & reull,
That now, god wat, as It conferwit Is,
The ftere is loft, and al is gon amys;

[Fol. 25 a.]

And vertew shuld hame to the court hyme dreß,
1976 That exillith goith in to the wildernes.

INGS MAKE A WISE PEOPLE.

If a king thus stood like his own
degree, his people would be
virtuous and wise.

Thus if o king ftud lyk his awn degree,
Wertwis and wyß than shuld his puple bee,
Only fet by vertew hyme to pleß,
1980 And fore adred his wisdom to displeß.
And if that he towart the vicis draw,

His folk fall go on to that ilk law;
What fhall hyme pleß that wil noch ellis fynd,
1984 Bot ther-apon fetith al ther mynde.

Thus the rule of his people and
kingdom standeth only in the
king's virtue.

Thus only in the wertew of o king
The reull ftant of his puple & his ringne,
If he be wyß and, but difsemblyng, fchewis,
1988 As I have faid, the vicis one to fchrewis.
And fo thus, *fir*, It ftant apone thi will
For to omend thi puple, or to fpill;
Or have thi court of vertewis folk, or fullis;

Since thou art wholly master of
the schools, teach them, and
they shall gladly learn."

1992 Sen yow art holl maifter of the fcoullis
Teichith them, and thei fal gladly leir,

⁴⁶ Or, "leir." MS. apparently has "leir," corrected to "heir."

That is to fay, that thei may no thing heir ⁴⁶
Sauf only wertew towart thyn estat;
1996 And cheriß them that wertews ben algait.
And thinkith what that wertew is to thee;
It pleßfith god, vphaldith thi degree."

Arthur considers his counsel
profitable.

"Maifter," *quod* he, "me think *rycht* profitable
2000 Yowr confeell Is, and wonder honorable
For me, and good; *rycht* well I have *confaut*,
And in myne hartis Inwartneß refaut.
I fhall fulfill and do yowr ordynans
2004 Als far of wit as I have fuffifans;
Bot y befeich yow, in til hartly wyß,

He beseeches him to expound
his dream,

That of my drem 3he fo to me dewyß,

The wich fo long haith occupeid my mynd,

how he shall only find help
through the water-lion, the
leech, and the flower.

2008 How that I shal no maner fucour fynd

Bot only throw the wattir lyon, & fyne

The leich that is withouten medyfyne;

And of the confell of the flour; wich ayre

2012 Wonderis lyk that no man can duclar.”

ATER-LION MEANS GOD.

“**N**ow, *fir*,” *quod* he, “and I of them al thre,

What thei betakyne shal I schaw to the,

The master’s explanation.

Such as the clerkis at them specifiit;

[Fol. 25 b.]

2016 Thei vfit no thing what thei signefiit.

The water-lion is the very God.

The wattir lyone Is the god werray,

God to the lyone is lyknyt many way;

But thei have hyme In to the wattir feñ,

2020 Confusit were ther wittis al, y weñ;

The water is men’s fragility;

The wattir was ther awn fragelitee,

And thar trespas, and thar Inequitee

In to this world, the wich thei ftond y-clofit;

2024 That was the wattir wich thei have supposit,

That haith there knowlag maad fo Inperfyty;

Thar fyne & ek ther worldis gret delyt,

As cloudy wattir, was euermore betweñ,

whereby they see not the lion
perfectly.

2028 That thei the lyone perfitly hath nocht feñ;

Bot as the wattir, wich was yer awn fynne,

That euermor thei ftond confufit In.

Had men been always religious,
they had seen the lion not in
water, but clearly.

If thei haith ftond in to religiõn clen,
2032 Thei had the lyone Not in watter fen,
Bot clerly vp in to the hewyne abuf,
Eternaly whar he fhall not remufe.
And euermore in vatter of fyne vas hee,

⁴⁷ “see”(?).

2036 For-quhi It is Impoffeble for to bee; ⁴⁷

The world is enclosed in the
darkness of their sin.

And thus the world, wich that thei ar In,
Y-clofit Is in dyrknes of ther fyne;
And ek the thikneß of the air betwen
2040 The lyone mad in vattir to be fen.
For It was *nocht* bot ftrenth of ther clergy
Wich thei have here, and It is bot erthly,
That makith them there refouns dewyß,
2044 And fe the lyone thus in erthly wyß.

The lion is God’s son, Jesu
Christ.

This is the lyone, god, and goddis sone,
Ihesu crift, wich ay in hewyne fal wonne.
For as the lyone of euery beft is king,
2048 So is he lord and maifter of al thing,
That of the bleffit vyrgyne vas y-bore.
Ful many a natur the lyone haith, quhar-fore
That he to god refemblyt is, bot I
2052 Lyk not mo at this tyme fpecify.
This is the lyone, thar-of have yow no dred,
That fhall the help and comfort In thi ned.

ECH WITHOUT MEDICINE IS CHRIST.

The sentens here now woll I the defyne

The leech without medicine is
also God.

2056 Of hyme, the lech *withouten* medyfyne,
Wich is the god that euery thing hath vroght.

[Fol. 26 a.]

For yow may know that vther Is It noght,

Not as surgeons,
As furgynis and felicianis, wich that delith
2060 *With* mortell thingis, and mortell thingis helyth,

whose art is in medicine,
And al thar art is in to medyfyne,
As it is ordanit be the mycht dewyne,

and in plaisters, drinks, and
various anointments; who know
the quality of the year, and the
disposition of the planets.

⁴⁸ MS. “anoñytmētis,” or “anoūytmētis.”

As plafteris, drinkis, and anouyntmentis ⁴⁸ feir,

2064 And of the qualyte watyng of the yher;

And of the planetis dispoficioune,

And of the naturis of compleccyoune,

And in the diuerß changing of hwmowris.

2068 Thus wnder reull lyith al there cwriss;

And yhit thei far as blynd man In the way,

Oft quhen that deith thar craft list to affay.

Bot god, the wich that is the foueran lech,

2072 Nedith no maner medyfyne to fech;

For ther is no Infyrmyte, nore wound,

Bot as hyme lykith al is holl and found.

But God can heal infirmity of
thought,

So can he heill Infyrmytee of thoght,

2076 Wich that one erdly medefyne can noght;

and also the soul that goeth to
confusion.

And als the faul that to confufiounne goith,
And haith with hyme and vther parteis both,
His dedly wound god helyth frome the ground;
2080 On to his cure no medyfyne is found.
This Is his mycht that neuer more shall fyne,
This is the leich *withouten* medyfyne;
And If that yhow at confeffiounne hath ben
2084 And makith the of al thi fynnis clen,

He shall be thy leech in all
necessity.

Yow art than holl, and this ilk famyn is he
Schall be thi leich In al neceffitee.

OWER IS THE VIRGIN MARY.

N ow of the flour y woll to the difcern:

⁴⁹ The word, though indistinct, is almost certainly “haith.” Stevenson has “high;” but this gives no sense.

2088 This is the flour that haith ⁴⁹ the froyt eternñ,
This is the flour, this fadith for no fchour,
This is the flour of euery flouris floure;

The flower is she of whom the
eternal fruit was born,

This is the flour, of quhom the froyt vas bornñ,
2092 This ws redemyt efter that we war lorñ;
This Is the flour that euer fpryngith new,
This is the flour that changith neuer hew;

the virgin that bore the Saviour,

This is the vyrgyne, this is the bleffit flour
2096 That Ihesu bur is our salweour,
This flour wnwemmyt of hir wirginittee;
This is the flour of our felicitee,
This is the flour to quhom ve fhuld exort,

that ceaseth not to support us
caitiffs,

2100 This is the flour not selfith to support
In prayere, confell, and in byffynes,

[Fol. 26 b.]

Vs catifis ay In to our wrechitnes
On to hir sone, the quich hir confell herith;
2104 This is the flour that al our gladneß sterith,

through whose prayer are many
saved.

Throuch whois prayer mony one is lawit,
That to the deth eternaly war relawit,
Ne war hir hartly suplicatione.

2108 This is the flour of our saluatione,
Next hir sone, the froyt of euery flour;
This is the lam that shal be thi succour,
If that the lykith hartly Reuerans

2112 And seruice zeld one to hir excellens,
Syne worfchip hir *with* al thi byffyneß;
Sche fal thi harm, fche fall thi ned redreß.

She shall so counsel the lion
and the leech, that thou need not
despair.

Sche fall fice confell if one to the two,
2116 The lyone and the fouerane lech alfo,
Yow fall not Ned yi drem[̄] for to dispar,
Nor zhit no thing that is in thi contraire.
Now—*quod* the maister—yow may well wnderstand
2120 Tueching thi drem as I have born on hande;
And planly haith the mater al declarith,
That yhow may know of wich yow was disparith.
The lech, the lyone, and the flour alfo,
2124 Yow worfchip them, yow serve them euermo;
And ples the world as I have laid before;
In gouernans thus stondith al thi glore.

Do now as thou list, for all is in
thy hand.

Do as yow list, for al is in thi honde,
2128 To tyne thi-felf, thi honore, and thi londe,
Or lyk o prince, o *conquerour*, or king,
In honore and in worfchip for to Ringe.”

R IS COMFORTED.

The king replies,

“Now,” *quod* the king, “I fell that the support
2132 Of yhour confell haith don me lich comfort,
that his heart is eased from fear;
Of euery raddour my hart is In to eß,
To 3hour *command*, god will, y fal obeß.
Bot o thing is yneuch wn to me,

but inquires if Galiot will win
over the red knight, and what is
his name.

2136 How galiot makith his awant that he
Shall have the *knycht*, that only by his honde
And manhed, was defendour of my londe;
If that fhall fall y pray yhow tellith me,
2140 And quhat he hecht, and of quhat lond is hee?”
“What that he hecht yow fhall no foryer know,

The master evades reply.

His dedis fall her-afterwart hyme schaw;
Bot *contrar* the he fhall be found no way.

⁵⁰ At the bottom of the page is the catch-word, “With that the king.”

2144 No more thar-of as now y will the fay.” ⁵⁰

[Fol. 27 a.]

With that the king haith at his maiftir tone

* Text unchanged. Duplication does not fit metre, and another edition has ‘one to his’.
** Missing syllable?

The king and the host return
home.

His leve, one to to* his cuntre for to goñe;
And al the oft makith none abyde,**
2148 To passing home anone thei can prowid;
And to *fir* gawane thei haith o lytter maad,
Ful fore ywound, and hyme on *with* them haade.

[T]he king, as that the story can declar,

The king sojourns twenty-four
days at Cardole, in Wales.

2152 Passith to o Cete that was Right fair,
And clepit cardole, In to walis, was,
For that tyme than It was the nereft place,
And thar he foiornt xxiiijti days
2156 In ryall festing, as the auttore lays.
So discretly his puple he haith cherit,
That he thar hartis holy haith *conquerit*.

Sir Gawan is healed in fifteen
days.

And *fir* gawan, helyt holl and found
2160 Be xv dais he was of euery wounde;
Right blyth therof in to the court war thei.

R AGAIN BECOMES MOURNFUL.

⁵¹ MS. “xxviiij,” altered to “xxiiij.”

And so befell, the xxiiij ⁵¹ day,

The king becomes mournful, as
he sits at the mess.

The king to fall in to o hewynes,
2164 Right ate his table fiting at the meß;

Gawan rebukes him.

And *fir* gawan cummyth hyme before,
And laid hyme, “*fir*, yhour thocht is al to fore,
Confidering the diuerß knychtis fere
2168 Ar of wncouth and strang landis here.”

The king answers in “matalent,”
The king anfuert, as in to matalent,

“Sir, of my *thocht*, or *ʒhit* of myne entent,
Yhe have the wrang me to repref, for-quhy
2172 Thar lewith none that ſhuld me blam, for I

that he was thinking of the
worthiest knight living;

Was thinkand one the worthieft that lewynt,
That al the worſchip In to armys prewynt;
And how the thonk of my defens he had,
2176 And of the wow that galiot haith mad.
But I have ſen, when that of my houſhold
Thar was, and of my falowſchip, that wold,
If that thei wiſt, quhat thing ſhuld me pleß,
2180 Thei wald *nocht* leif for trawell nor for eß.
And ſum tyme It *preſwmyt* was & laid,

that he once had the flower of
knyghthood in his houſehold,
but now this flower is away.

That in my houſhold of al this world I had
The flour of *knychthed* and of chevalry;
2184 Bot now thar-of y ſe the contrarye,
Sen that the flour of *knychthed* is away.”
“Schir,” *quod* he, “of Refone futh yhe fay;

[Fol. 27 b.]

And if god will, In al this warld ſo Round
2188 He ſal be foght, if that he may he found.”

JE’S EXPEDITION.

Gawan departs to ſeek
Lancelot.

Than gawan goith *with* o *knychtly* chere,
At the hal dure he faith In this maner:
“In this paſag who lykith for to wend?
2192 It is o Iorne moſt for to comend
That In my tyme In to the court fallith,
To knyghtis wich that chewellry lowith

Or trawell In to armys for to hant;
2196 And lat no knyght fra thyne-furth hyme awant

All the knights rise to go with
him.

That it denyith;”—*with* that onon thei roß,
Al the knyghtis, and frome the burdis goß.
The king that fauch In to his hart was wo,

Arthur reproves him.

2200 And laid, “*fir* gawan, nece, why dois yow fo?
Knowis yow nocht I myne houfhold fuld encreß,
In knyghted, and in honore, and largeß?
And now yow thinkith mak me diffolat
2204 Of knyghtis, and my houß tranfulat,
To fek o knyght, and It was neuer more
Hard fich o femble makith o before.”

Gawan explains.

“*Sir*,” *quod* he, “als few as may yhow pless;
2208 For what I said was no thing for myne eß,
Nor for defir of falowfchip, for-why
To paß alone, but cumpany, think I;
And ilk knyght to paß o fundry way;
2212 The mo thei paß the fewar eßchef thay,
Bot thus fhall pas no mo bot as yhow left.”

Arthur assigns him forty
companions.

“Takith,” *quod* he, “of quhom 3he lykith beft,
Fourty in this pafag for to go;”
2216 At this *command* and gawan chefit fo
Fourty, quhich that he louit, & that was
Richt glaid in to his falowfchip to pas.

HE AND HIS FELLOWS DEPART.

These knights arm themselves,

[A]nd furth thei go, and al anarmyt thei
2220 Come to the king, *withouten* more delay,

and bring the relics, whereon to
swear to shew the truth.

The relykis brocht, as was the maner tho,
When any knyghtis frome the court fuld go.
Or when the paffit, or quhen thei com, thei fwor
2224 The trouth to schaw of euery aduentur.
Sir gawan knelyng to his falowis fais,
“Yhe lordis, wich that in this feking gais,
So many noble and worthi knyghtis ar 3he,
2228 Me think in wayne yhour trauel fhuld nocht be,

[Fol. 28 a.]

For aduentur is non so gret to pref,
As I suppone, nor 3he fal It effchef,
And if 3he lyk as I that fhal dewyß,
2232 Yhour oth to fwer In to the famyne wyß
Myne oith to kep;”—and that thei vndertak,
How euer fo that he his oith mak
It to conferf, and that thei have all fworñ.
2236 Than gawan, wich that was the king beforñ,

Gawane swears not to return till
he has found Lancelot, or
evidence of him.

On kneis fwore, “I fal the futh duclar
Of euery thing when I agan Repar,
Nor neuer more a3hane fal I returñ,
2240 Nore in o place long for to fuiorñ
Whill that the knyght or verray evydens
I have, that fhal be toknis of credens.”
His faloufchip abafit of that thing,
2244 And als therof anoyt was the king,

LDY ASKS LANCELOT HIS NAME.

Arthur reproves him for
forgetting the coming day of
battle.

Sayng, “Nece, yow haith al folly vroght

And wilfulneß, that haith nocht in thi thocht
The day of batell of galot and me.”

Gawane says it must be so.

2248 *Quod* gawan, “Now non other ways ma be.”

Gawane and his fellow lace
their helms, and take their
leave.

Thar-*with* he and his falowſchip alfo
Thar halmys laſit, on to ther horß thei go,
Syne tuk ther lef, and frome the court the fare,
2252 Thar names ware to long for to declar.
Now fal we leif hyme and his cumpany,
That in thar ſeking paſſith biſſely;

JE AND HIS FELLOWS DEPART.

The story returns to the lady of
Melyhalt.

And of the lady of melyhalt we tell,
2256 *With* whome the knyght mot ned alway duell.

⁵² Room is here left in the MS. for an illuminated letter, and a small “o” inserted as a note.

⁵²[O] day ſhe mayd hyme on to *hir* prefens fet,
And on o ſege be-ſid hir haith hyme ſet,
“*Sir*, in keping I have yow halding long,”
2260 And thus ſche laïd, “for gret treſpas & wrong,
Magre my ſtewart, in worſchip, and for-thi
3he ſuld me thonk;”—“*madem*,” *quod* he, “and I
Thonk yhow ſo that euer, at my mycht,
2264 Whar-ſo I paß that I ſal be yhour knyght.”

She inquires Lancelot’s name.

“Grant mercy, *ſir*, bot o thing I 3ow pray,
What that 3he ar 3he wold *wichſauf* to ſay.”

He refuses to tell.

“*Madem*,” *quod* he, “yhour mercy alſk I, quhy
2268 That for to ſay apone no wyß may I.”
“No! wil 3he not? non *oyer* ways as now

She vows to keep him in thrall
till the day of combat;

3he fal repent, and ek I mak awow
One to the thing the wich that I beft love,

[Fol. 28 b.]

2272 Out frome my keping fal 3he not Remuf
Befor the day of the affemlee,
Wich that, o 3her, is nereft for to bee;
And if that 3ow haith pleffit for to fay,
2276 3he had fore me deliuerit ben this day;

and to go to the court to try and
learn it.

And I fal knaw, quheyer 3he wil or no,
For I furth-with one to the court fal go,
Whar that al thithingis goith & cumyth foñ.”
2280 “Madem,” *quod* he, “yhour plefance mot be doñe.”

The knight retires.

With that the knycht one to his chalmer goith,
And the lady hir makith to be wroith
A3anis hyme, but futhly vas fche not,
2284 For he al-out was mor in to hir thocht.
Than fchapith fhe a3ane the ferd day,
And richly fche gan hir-felf aray;
Syne clepit haith apone her cufynes,

Before going to the court,

2288 And faith, “y will one to the court me dreß;
And malice I have fchawin on to 3hon knycht,
For-quhy he wold *nocht* fchew me quhat he hicht,
Bot fo, I-wyß, It is *nocht* in my *thocht*,
2292 For worthyar non In to this erth is wrocht.

she prays her cousin to take care
of him.

Tharfor I pray, and hartly I requer
3he mak hyme al the *cumpany* and chere,
And do hyme al the worfchip and the eß,

2296 Excep his honore, wich that may hym pleß;
And quhen I cum deliuerith hyme als fre
As he is now;”—“ne have no dred,” *quod* fche.

[T]he lady *partit*, and hir lef hath ton,
2300 And by hir Iorne to the court Is gon.

DES TO SEE ARTHUR.

The lady meets Arthur at
Logris;

The king hapnit at logris for to bee,
Wich of his realme was than the chef cete;
And haith hir met, and In til hartly wyß
2304 Refautit her, and welcummyt oft-fyß;

who brings her home to his
palace;

And haith hir home one to his palice brocht,
Whar that no dante nedith to be focht,
And maid hir cher *with* al his ful entent.
2308 Eft fupir one to o chalmer ar thei went,
The king and fche, and ek the quen al thre;
Of hir tithandis at hir than afkit hee,

and inquires what has brought
her.

And what that hir one to the court had brocht?

⁵³ MS. "conne."

2312 "Sir," *quod* fche, "I come ⁵³ not al for nocht;

She says she has a friend who
has made a challenge,

I have o frend haith o dereyne ydoo,

[Fol. 29 a.]

And I can fynd none able knyght tharto;
For he the wich that in the *contrar* Is
2316 Is hardy, fstrong, and of gret kyne, I-wyß;
Bot, It is laid, If I *mycht* have *with* me
3our knyght, quich in the last affemble

which the red knight could best
maintain.

Was in the feld, and the red armys bur,
2320 In his manhed y *mycht* my cauß affur;
And yhow, *fir*, richt hartly I exort
In to this ned my myfter to fupport."

R CAN TELL HER NOTHING.

"Madem, by faith one to the quen I aw

Arthur replies that Gawane is
gone to seek him.

2324 That I beft loue, the knyght I neuer faw
In nerneß by which that I hyme knew;
And ek gawane Is gan hyme for to few

With other fourty knyghtis In to cumpany.”

2328 The lady smylit at ther fantessy;

The quen thar-with presumyt wel that sche

The queen asks the lady if she
knows where he is.

Knew quhat he was, and laid, “madem, If zhe

Knowith of hyme what that he is, or quhar,

2332 We zhow befech til ws for to declar.”

She replies no, and proposes to
return.

“Madem,” *quod* sche, “now be the faith that I

Aw to the king and yhow, as for no why

To court I cam, but of hyme to Inquere;

2336 And fen of hyme I can no tithingis here,

Nedlyngis to-morn homwart mon I fair.”

Arthur prays her to stay.

“Na,” *quod* the king, “madem, our fon It waire;

zhe sal remayne her for the qwenys lak;

2340 Syne fhal zhe of our best knyghtis tak.”

“Sir,” *quod* sche, “I pray zow me excuß,

For-quhy to paß nedis me behuß;

Nor, fen I want the knyght which I have focht,

2344 Wtheris *with* me to have defir I nocht,

For I of otheris have that may suffice.”

Bot zhit the king hir prayt on sich wyß,

She remains till the third day.

That sche remanit whill the thrid day;

2348 Syne tuk hir leif to pafing hom hir way.

She is sumptuously entertained,

It nedis not the felting to declar

Maid one to hir, nor company nor fare;

Sche had no knyght, sche had no damyfeill,

2352 Nor thei richly rewardit war and well.

and returns home.

Now goith the lady homwart, and sche

In her entent defyrus Is to lee
The flour of kny^{ch}thed and of chevelry;
2356 So was he pryfit and hold to euery wy.

LDY AGAIN SENDS FOR LANCELOT.

[Fol. 29 b.]

The lady, which one to hir palace come,

Soon after, she sends for
Lancelot,

Bot of fchort time remanith haith at home
When fche gart bryng, *withouten* Recidens,
2360 *With* grete effere this kny^{ch}t to hir *presens*,
And laid hyme; “*fir*, fo mekil have I *focht*
And knowith that be-for I knew *nocht*,

and proposes to ransom him,

That If yhow lyk I wil yhour Ransone mak.”

2364 “Madem, gladly, wil 3he *wichlauf* to tak
Efter that as my powar may attein,
Or that I may *prowid* be ony *meñ*.”

“Now, *fir*,” fho laid, “forfuth It fal be so,

on one of three conditions.

2368 Yhe fal have thre, and cheß yhow on of tho;

And if yhow lykith them for to refuß,

I can no mor, but 3he fal me excuß,

Yhe *nedis* mot fulten yhour aduentur

2372 Contynualy In ward for til endur.”

“Madem,” *quod* he, “and I yhow hartly pray,

⁵⁴ So MS. We should probably read “bee.”

What that thei fay ⁵⁴ 3he wald *wichlauf* to fay?”

Either he must tell whom he
loves,

“[T]he first,” *quod* fche, “who hath in to the cheñ

2376 Of low yhour hart, and if 3he may *dereñ*?

or declare his name,

The next, yhour nam, the which 3e fal not lye?

or say if he expects again to
equal his former exploits.

The thrid, if euer 3he think of cheualry

So mekil worfchip to atten in feild

2380 Apone o day in armys wnder fcheld,

As yat 3he dyd the famyne day, when 3he

In red armys was at the affemlee?”

“Madem,” *quod* he, “is thar non vther way

2384 Me to redem, but only thus to fay

Of thingis, which that Rynyth me to blam,

Me to awant my lady or hir name?

But If that I moft fchawin furth that one,

2388 What suerte fchal I have for to gone

At libertee out of this danger free?”

“Schir, for to dred no myfter is,” *quod* fhee;

“As I am trew and faithfull woman hold,

2392 3he fal go fre quhen one of thir is told.”

“Madem, yhour will non vther ways I may,

He refuses to tell his lady’s
name,

I mone obey; and to the firft y fay,

⁵⁵ A space is here left for an illuminated letter.

⁵⁵[I]s, to declar the lady of myne hart,

2396 My goft fal rather of my breft astart”—

Whar-by the lady fayndit al for nocht

The lowe quhich long hath ben In to his thocht—

or his own;

“And of my nam, fchortly for to fay,

2400 It ftondith fo that one no wyß I may.

LOT CLAIMS HIS LIBERTY;

[Fol. 30 a.]

Bot of the thrid, madem, I se that I

Mon lay the thing that tuechith velany;

but declares that he trusts to do
more than ever before; and
requires his liberty.

For futh it is I traft, and god before,

2404 In feld that I fal do of armys more

Than euer I did, if I *commandit* bee.

And now, madem, I have my libertee,

For I have laid I neuer *thocht* to lay.”

2408 “Now, *fir*,” *quod* *ſche*, “when-euer 3he wil ye may;

She begs of him a boon;

Bot o thing Is, I yhow hartly raquer,

Sen I have hold yhow apone ſuch maner

Not as my fo, that 3he vald grant me till.”

2412 “Madem,” *quod* he, “It fal be as 3he will.”

“Now, *fir*,” *quod* *ſche*, “it is no thing bot 3he

that he will remain with her till
the day of battle;

Remañ *with* ws wn to the aſſemble,

And eueri thyng that In yhour myſter lyis

2416 I fall gar ordan at yhour awn dewyß;

And of the day I ſhall yow *certefy*

Of the aſſemble 3he fal not pas therby.”

“Madem,” *quod* he, “It fal be as yhow lift.”

2420 “Now, *fir*,” *quod* *ſche*, “and than I hald It beft,

That 3he remañ lyk to the ſamyne dogre

As that 3he war, yat non fal wit that 3he

Deliuerit war; and in to ſacret wyß

2424 Thus may 3he be; and now yhe fal dewyß

and inquires what arms he
would like to have made for
him. He chooses black armour,

What armys that yhow lykyth I gar mak.”

SKS FOR BLACK ARMOUR.

“Madem,” *quod* he, “armys al of blak.”

With this, this knyght is to his chalmer goñ;
2428 The lady gan ful prewaly difspone
For al that longith to the knyght, in feild;
Al blak his horß, his armour, and his scheld,

which is provided.

That nedful is, al thing fche well prewidith;
2432 And in hir keping thus *with* hir he bidith.
Suppos of love fche takyne hath the charg,

She keeps her love close,

Sche bur It clos, ther-of fche vas not larg,
Bot wyfly fche abstenit hir diffir,
2436 For ellis quhat, fche knew, he was afyre;
Thar-for hir wit hir worschip haith defendit,

being commended for
discretion.

For in this world thar was nan mor commendit,
Boith of discreccioun and of womanhed,
2440 Of gouernans, of nurtur, and of farhed.
This knyght *with* hir thus al this whil mon duell,

The story returns to Arthur—

And furth of arthur sumthing wil we tell—
[T]hat walkyng vas furth in to his Regiounis,
2444 And foiornt in his ceteis and his townis,

[Fol. 30 b.]

As he that had of vifdome fufficyans.

who obeys the counsel of
Amytans,

He kept the lore of mailter amytans
In ryghtwyfnes, In festing and larges,
2448 In cherifing cumpany and hamlynes;

R'S LIBERALITY.

For he was biffy and was deligent,

and gives away largely;

And largely he iffith, and difpent

Rewardis, boith one to the pur & riche,
 2452 And holdith fest throw al the ȝher eliche.
 In al the world passing gan his name,
 He chargit not bot of encreß and fame,
 And how his puples hartis to empleß;
 2456 Thar gladnes ay was to his hart most eß.
 He rakith not of riches nor treßfour,
 Bot to dispend one worſchip & honour;
 He ifith riches, he ifith lond and rent,
 2460 He cheriſyth them *with* wordis eloquent,
 and thus gains his people's love.
 So that thei can them vtraly propone
 In his ſeruice thar lyves to diſpone:
 So gladith themē his homely *contynans*,
 2464 His cherifyng, his wordis of plefans,
 His cumpany, and ek his mery chere,
 His gret rewardis, and his iftis fere.
 Thus hath the king non vthir beſynes
 2468 Bot cherifing of knyghtis and largeß,
 To mak hyme-ſelf of honour be *commend*;
 And thus the ȝher he drywith to the ende.

EXPLICIT SECUNDA PARS, INCIPIT TERCIA PARS.

UCE DRAWS TO A CLOSE.

[BOOK III.]

The sun ascends in his altitude.

⁵⁶ So MS. Should we read “pasith”?

The long dirk pafag⁵⁶ of the vinter, & the lycht

2472 Of phebus *comprochit with* his mycht;
The which, *ascending* In his altitud,
Awodith *saturñ with* his stormys Rude;

The soft dew falls down from
heaven.

⁵⁷ So MS. It should be “*falis*.”

The soft dew one fra the hewyne doune valis ⁵⁷

2476 Apone the erth, one hillis and on valis,
And throw the fobir & the mwft hwmouris
Vp nurifit ar the erbis, and in the flouris

Nature decks the earth with
various hues.

Natur the erth of many diuerß hew

2480 Our-fret, and cled *with* the tendir new.

[Fol. 31 a.]

The birdis may them hiding in the grawis

The birds may hide them from
the hawk in the groves, and
Scilla may ascend in the air.

Wel frome the halk, that oft ther lyf berevis;
And scilla hie *ascending* in the ayre,

2484 That euery vight may heryng hir declar
Of the fessone the passing lustynes.

This was the tyme that phebus gan hym dreß
In to the rame, and haith his courß bygown,

2488 Or that the trewis and the 3her vas Rown,

The time of combat between
Galiot and the king drew near.

Which was y-fet of galiot and the king
Of thar assamble, and of thar meting.

Arthur haith a xv dais before

2492 Assemblit al his barnag and more

That weryng wnder his subieccioune,
Or louith hyme, or longith to his crown;
And haith his Iornay tone, *withouten* let,

Arthur goes to the appointed
place.

2496 On to the place the wich that was y-fet,
Whar he hath found befor hyme mony o knyght
That cummyng war *with* al thar holl mycht,
Al enarmyt both *with* spere & scheld,
2500 And ful of lugis plantith haith the feld,
Hyme In the wer for to support and serf
At al ther mycht, his thonk for to differf.

JE REJOINS ARTHUR.

And gawan, which was in the feking 3hit
2504 Of the gud knyght, of hyme haith got no wit,

Gawane remembers the day,
Remembrith hyme apone the kingis day,
And to his falowis one this wys can say:
“To 3how is knowin the mater, in what wyß
2508 How that the king hath *with* his ennemys
A certan day, that now comprochit nere,
And one to ws war hewynes to here
That he var in to perell or in to dreid,
2512 And we away and he of ws haith neid;
For we but hyme no thing may elschef,
And he but ws in honore well may lef;
For, be he loft, we may no thing *with*ftond,
2516 Our-felf, our honore we tyne, & ek our lond.

and proposes to his fellows to
go to help the king.

Tharfor, I red we pas on to the king,
Suppos our oth It hurt in to sum thing,
And in the feld *with* hyme for til endur,
2520 Of lyf or deth and tak our aduentur.”
Thar-to thei ar consentit euerilkon,
And but dulay the have thar Iorney toñe.

[Fol. 31 b.]

When that the king them law, in his entent

Arthur is well content at their
coming,

2524 Was of thar com Right wonder well content;
For he *prefwmyt* no thing that thei wold

not expecting them.

Have cummyne, but one furth to yer feking hold.

And thus the kinghis oft affemblit has

2528 Aȝane the tyme, aȝaine the day that vas
Y-statut and ordanit for to bee,

And euery thing hath fet in the dogre.

[A]nd galiot, that haith no thing forȝhet

2532 The termys quhich that he befor had set,

Galiot also assembles his folk,

Affemblit has, apone his best maner,

His folk, and al his other thingis fere,

That to o weryour longith to prouid,

2536 And is y-come apone the tothir fyde.

doubling his army and artillery;

Whar he befor was one than vas he two,

And al his vthir artilȝery also

He dowblith hath, that merwell was to seȝ;

and pitches on the green by the
river.

2540 And by the rewere lychtit one the greȝ,

And ftronghar thane ony wallit toun

His oft y-bout yclofit in Randoune.

Thus war thei cummyne apone ather fyd

Before the truce is ended,

2544 Be-for the tyme, them-felf for to prowid.

UCE ENDS.

Or that the trewis was complet & rwn,

Men mycht have fen one euery fid begwn

many combats are seen between

lusty men;
Many a fair and knyghtly Iuperty
2548 Of lusty men, and of 3ong chevalry,
Difyrus In to armys for to pruf;
Sum for wynyng, *fum* caufith vas for luf,
Sum In to worschip to be exaltate,
2552 Sum caufit was of wordis he & hate,
That lykit not ydill for to ben;

a hundred pair at once.
A hundereth pair at onis one the gren.
Thir lusty folk thus can thar tyme dispend,
2556 Whill that the trewis goith to the ende.

The truce past,
The trewis pafte, the day is cummyne onofne,
One euery fyd the can them to dispone;
And thai that war most sacret & most dere

Galiot's friends inquire who
shall fight on his side on the
morrow.
2560 To galiot, at hyme the can enquire,
"Who sal assemble one yhour fyd to-morne?
To-nycht the trewis to the end is worne."
He anfuerit, "As yhit one to this were
2564 I ame awyfit I wil none armys bere,

[Fol. 32 a.]
Bot If It stonde of more Necessitee;
Nor to the feld will pas, bot for to see
Yhone knyght, the which that berith lich o fame."

He commands the first-conquest
king to take 30,000 men.
2568 Than clepit he the *conquest* king be name,
And hyme *commandit* xxx thousand tak
Azaine the morne, and for the feld hyme mak.
And gawane haith, apone the toyer syde,
2572 Confultit his Eme he schuld for them prowid,

And that he schuld none armys to hyme tak

⁵⁸ MS. "Wihill."

Whill ⁵⁸ galiot will for the feld hyme mak.

⁵⁹ Omitted in MS.

"I grant," quod [he ⁵⁹], "wharfor 3he mone dispone

Gawane leads Arthur's forces.

2576 Yhow to the feld *with* al my folk to-morne,

And thinkith in yhour manhed and curage

For to recift 3hone folkis gret owtrag."

The day comes.

[T]he *nicht* is gone, vp goith the morow gray,

2580 The *brycht* sone so cherith al the day:

The *knychtis* gone to armys than, in haft;

One goith the *scheildis* and the *helmys* laft;

Arthur's men cross the ford.

Arthuris oft out our the furrde thai ryd.

2584 And thai agane, apone the toyer syd,

Galiot's men assemble in a vale.

Affemblit ar apone o lufty greyne,

In to o waill, whar sone thar *mycht* be feyne

Of *knychtis* to-gedder many o pair

2588 In to the feld affemblyng her & thair,

⁶⁰ MS. has "borne." We should read "lorne," as in line 2092.

And *itedis* which that haith thar mafter lorne; ⁶⁰

The *knychtis* war done to the erth doune borne.

OF SIR ESQUYRIS.

Sir Esquyris, a manly knight,

Sir esquyris, which was o manly *knycht*

2592 In to hyme-felf, and hardy vas & wycht;

And in till armys gretly for to pryß,

3hit he was pure, he prewit wel oft-fyß;

at that time of Galiot's
company,

And that tyme was he of the cumpanee
2596 Of galiot, bot efterwart was hee
With arthur; and that day In to the feild
He come, al armyt boith with spere and scheld,
With ferß defir, as he that had na dout,

attacks a band,

2600 And is assemblit ewyne apone a rowt;
His spere is gone, the knyght goith to the erd,
And out onon he pullith haith o fwerd;

and proves his manhood.

That day In armys prewit he rycht well
2604 His strenth, his manhed; arthuris folk thai fell.

OF SIR GWYANS.

Then Galys Gwynans, brother
of Ywan,

Than galys gwynans, with o manly hart,
Which broyer was of ywane the baltart,
He cummyne Is onone one to the ftour

[Fol. 32 b.]

2608 For *conquering* In armys of honour,

encounters him, and horse and
man go all four to earth.

And cownterit with esquyris hath so

⁶¹ MS. has “than.”

That ⁶¹ horß and man, al four, to erth thai go;
And ftill o quhill lying at the ground.

2612 With that o part of arthuris folk thei found

Arthur’s folk rescue Gwyans;

Till gwyans, and haith hyme lone refkewit.

Azanis them til esquyris thei fewyt

thirty knights of Galiot’s arrive,
and rescue Esquyris.

Of galiotis well xxx^{ti} knyghtis & mo;

2616 Gwyans goith done, and vthir vij alfo,

The wich war tone & elqwyris relewit.

Next Ywan comes to the *mêlée*.

Than ywane the anterus, aggrewit,

With kynnifmen one to the melle *focht*.

2620 The hardy knyghtis, that one thar worfchip *thocht*,

Cownterit them In myddis of the *scheld*,

Whar many o knyght was born doñ in the feld;

Galiot's men give way.

Bot thei wich ware on galiotis *part*,

2624 So wndertakand nor of fo hardy hart

Ne ware thei not as was in ye *contrare*.

Gwyans is again rescued.

Sir galys gwyans was relqwyt thare

With his falowis, and elqwyris don bore.

2628 Thar al the batellis cam, withouten more,

On ather *part*, and is affemblit fo

50,000 men are assembled.

Whar fyfty thoufand war thei, & no mo.

30,000 on Galiot's side

approach the river,

In o plane befyd the gret Riwere

2632 Xxx thoufand one galiotis half thei vare;

and 10,000 on Arthur's.

Of arthuris x thoufand and no mo

Thei ware, and 3hit thai *contenit* them fo

And in the feld fo manly haith born,

2636 That of thar fois haith the feld forfworñ.

WANE'S INTREPIDITY.

The *conquest* king, wich the *perell* knowith,

Gawane puts the conquest-king

to flight.

Ful manly one to the feld he drowith;

The lord *sir* gawan, couerit with his *scheld*,

2640 He rufchit in myddis of the feld,

And haith them fo in to his com affayt,
That of his manhed ware thei al affrait;
No langer *mycht* thei *contrar* hyme endur,
2644 Bot fled, and goith one to *discumfiture*.

Galiot, full of anger and grief,
sends out a new band.

And galiot, wich haith the *discumfit* fen,
Fulfillit ful of anger and of ten,
Incontinent he send o new poware,
2648 Whar-*with* the feldis al our-couerit ware

[Fol. 33 a.]

Of armyt *stedis* both in plait and maill,
With knychtis wich war reddy to affaill.

Gawane draws his men
together, and shews them
comfortable words.

Sir gawan, feing al the gret suppris
2652 Of *fois cummyng* In to lich o wys,
Togiddir al his cumpany he drew,
And confortable wordis to them *schew*;
So at the *cummyng* of thar ennemys

They receive the foe in manly
wise.

2656 Thei them *refauf*, in fo manly *wyß*,
That many one felith deithis wound,
And *wnder* horß lyith lobing one the ground.
This vther *cummyth* in to gret *defir*,
2660 Fulfillit ful of *matelent* and *Ire*,
So *freschly*, *with* fo gret o *confluens*,
Thar strong affay hath don lich *vyolens*,
And at thar come *arthuris* folk fo led,
2664 That thai war ay *abayfit* and *adred*.
Bot gawan, wich that, by this *worldis* fame,
Of *manhed* and of *knychthed* bur the name,
Haith *prewit* [hym] well be *experiens*;

2668 For only In til armys his defens

Gawane encourages his fellows,
Haith maid his falowis tak sich hardyment,
That manfully thei biding one the bent.
Of his manhed war merwell to raherß;
2672 The knyghtis throw the scheldis can he perß,
That many one thar dethis haith refaut;
None armour frome his mychty hond them faut,

though their foes are three to
one;

3hit ay for one ther ennemys wor thre.
2676 Long mycht thei nocht endur in such dugree;
The preß it was so creuell & so strong,
In gret anoy and haith continewit longe,

yet his men are forced to retreat
to their tents.

That, magre them, thei nedis moft abak
2680 The way one to thar lugis for to tak.
Sir gawan thar sufferith gret myfchef,
And wonderis in his knyghthed can he pref;
His falowfchip haith merwell that hym faw,
2684 So haith his fois that of his fuerd ftud aw.

AN RESCUES GAWANE.

Arthur beholds the peril of the
field, and sends Sir Ywan to
help them,

King arthur, that al this whill beheld
The danger and the perell of the feld,
Sir ywan *with* o falowfchip he fende,
2688 Them In that ned to help & to defend,

[Fol. 33 b.]

Qwich fond them In to danger and in were,
And enterit nere In to thar tentis were.

who finds Sir Gawane fighting
on foot with only his sword.

Sir gawan fechtand was one fut At erde,
2692 And no defend, but only in his fwerde,
Azanis them both *with* spere and scheld.

⁶² Read “felde”?

Of galowa the knyght goith to the erde. ⁶²

The battle was furious and
wood.

⁶³ MS. “woid,” but the “i” is undotted, and is therefore perhaps meant for the first stroke of a “u.”

Thar was the batell furyous and woud ⁶³

2696 Of armyt knyghtis; to the grownde thai ȝhud.

Sir ywane, that was a noble knyght,

He schew his strenth, he schew thar his gret mycht,

In al his tyme that neuer of before

2700 Off armys, nore of knyghted, did he more:

Sir Ywan rescues Sir Gawane,

Sir gawan thar refkewit he of fors,

Magre his fois, and haith hyme set one horß

That frome the first conquest king he wañ;

who was so evilly wounded,
that he was the worse thereof
evermore.

2704 Bot *fir* gawan fo ewill was wondit than,

And in the feld supprifit was fo fore,

That he the werß thar-of was euermore.

Thar schew the lord *fir* ywan his curage,

2708 His manhed, & his noble waffolage;

And gawan, in his doing, wald nocht irk;

THE FIRST DAY'S BATTLE.

Darkness parts the combatants.

So al the day enduring to the dyrk

Sal them, magre of thar defyre, *constren*

2712 On ayar half fore [to] depart in twen.

And when that gawan of his horß vas toñ,

The blud out of his noiß & mouth is goñ,

And largely fo passith euery wounde,

Sir Gawane swoons,

2716 In fwonyng thore he fell one to the ground:

Than of the puple petee was to here

The lemytable clamour, and the chere;

so that the king despairs of his
“niece’s” life, and laments over
him.

And of the king the sorow and the care,

2720 That of his necis lyf was in diffpare.

“Far well,” he sais, “my gladnes, & my delyt,

Apone knyghted far well myne appetit,

Fare well of manhed al the gret curage,

2724 Yow flour of armys and of vassolage,

Gif yow be loft!”—thus til his tent hyme brocht

The surgeons are sought,

With wofull hart, and al the furreyzenis socht,

Wich for to cum was reddy at his neid;

2728 Thai fond the lord was of his lyf in dreid,

For wondit was he, and ek wondit so,

who found he had two broken
ribs, but no mortal wound.

And in his fyd ware brokyne Ribys two.

Bot nocht for-thi the king thai maid beleif

[Fol. 34 a.]

2732 That at that tyme he shuld the deith eschef.

[O]ff melyhalt the ladyis knyghtis were

In to the feld, and can thir tithingis here,

The lady of Melyhalt’s knights
tell her how the battle went,

And home to thar lady ar thai went,

2736 Til hir to schewing efter thar entent,

In euery poynt, how that the batell stode

Of galiot, and of his multitud;

and how Gawane bare him in

the field, and of his wounds.

And how gawan hyme in the feld hath borñ,
2740 Throw quhoys fwerd fo many o knyght vas lorñ,
And of the knyghtly wonderis that he wrocht,
Syne how that he one to his tent vas brocht.
The lady hard, that lowit gawan so,

She weeps for him.

⁶⁴ MS. “in in”; but “in to” is clearly meant.

2744 She gan to wep, in to ⁶⁴ hir hart vas wo.

Lancelot requests to see the
lady;

Thir tythyngis one to lancelot ar goñ,
Whar-of that he was wonder wo-bygone,
And for the lady haftely he sent,
2748 And fche til hyme, at his command, Is went:

and inquires if Gawane is really
likely to die.

He saluft hir, and laid, “madem, Is trew
Thir tithingis I her report of new
Of the affemle, and meting of the oft,
2752 And of fir gawan, wich that fhuld be loft?

LOT'S LAMENT FOR GAWANE.

If that be fwth, adew the flour of armys,

He laments over him,

Now neuermore recoueryt be the harmys!
In hyme was manhed, curteffy, and trouth,
2756 Befy trawell In knyghted, ay but fleuth,
Humilyte, [and] gentrice, and cwrag;
In hyme thar was no maner of outrage.

first apostrophizing himself,

Allace! knyght, allace! what fhal yow fay?
2760 Yow may complen, yow may bewail the day
As of his deith, and gladfchip aucht to fes,
Baith menftrafy and felting at the des;

For of this lond he was the holl comfort,
2764 In tyme of ned al knyghted to support!

and next blaming the lady for
not having allowed him to be
present in the battle.

Allace! madem, and I durft say at zhe
Al yhour beheft not kepit haith to me,
Whar-of that I was in to full belef
2768 Azañe this day that I schuld have my lef,
And nocht as cowart thus schamfully to ly
Excludit in to cage frome chewalry,
Whar othir knyghtis anarmyt on thar ftedis
2772 Hawntis ther zhouthhed in to knyghtly dedis.”
“Sir,” quod fche, “I red yhow not displeß,

[Fol. 34 b.]

zhe may In tyme her-eftir cum at es;

LOT PREPARES FOR BATTLE.

She promises he shall go to the
next battle,

For the thrid day Is ordanit, & fhal be
2776 Of the oftis a new affemble,
And I have gart ordan al the gere
That longith to zour body for to were,

saying that his sable armour is
ready.

Boith horß and armour In the famyne wyß
2780 Of fable, ewyne aftir zhour awn dewyß;
And yhe fal her remayne one to the day;
Syne may zhe paß, fore well zhe knaw the way.”
“I will obey, madem, to yhour entent.”

2784 *With* that fche goith, and to hir reft is went:

In the morn she takes her leave,
to go to the court.

One the morn arly vp fche roß
Without delay, and to the knyght fche gois,

And twk hir lef, and laid that fcho vald fare
2788 On to the court, *with*-outen any mare.

He kneels, and thanks her often.

Than knelit he, and thankit hir oft-fys,
That fche fo mych hath done hyme of gentriß,
And hir byhecht euer, at his myght,
2792 To be hir awn trew & ftedfaft knyght.

She goes unto the king,

Sche thonkith hyme, and fyne fche goith *her* way
On to the king, *with*-owten more delay,

⁶⁵ MS. “*with*,” which is crossed out, and “*in*” inserted above, rather minutely written.

Whar that *in* ⁶⁵ honour *with* king & qwen fche fall
2796 Rycht thonkfully refautit be *with*-all.
Eft to *fir* gawan thai hir led, & fche
Ryght gladly hyme defyrit for to fee,

and finds Sir Gawane quite
different from what had been
told her.

And fche hyme fond, and fche was glad tharfore,
2800 All vthir ways than was hir told before.
The knyght, the wich in to hir keping vas,

The lady’s cousin cherishes
Lancelot in her best manner.

Sche had *commandit* to hir cuffynece,
Wich cherift hyme apone hir beft manere,
2804 And comfort hyme, and maid hym *rycht* gud chere.

[T]he days goith, fo paffith als the *nicht*,

The third day, the maiden goes
to his chamber, and fastens on
his armour.

The thrid morow, as that the fone vas *lycht*,
The knyght onon out of his bed aroß,
2808 The maden fone one to his chalmer goß,
And facretly his armour one hyme spent.
He tuk his lef, and fyne his way he went

He goes to the same green,
beside the river, as before.

Ful prewaly, *rycht* to the famyne greñ
2812 One the rewere, whar he befor had ben,
Ewyne as the day [he] the first courß hath maad.
Alone *rycht* thar he howit, and abaade,

[Fol. 35 a.]

Behalding to the bertes, whar the qweñ

He abides there alone, looking
towards the parapet where he
saw the queen.

2816 Befor at the assemble he had señ
Rycht so the lone schewith furth his *lycht*,
And to his armour went is euery *wycht*;

The jousting begins.

One athir half the Iusting is bygon,
2820 And many o fair and knychn[t]ly courß is rowen.

The black knight still halts on
his steed.

The blak *knycht* 3hit howyns on his fted,
Of al thar doing takith he no hed,
Bot ay, apone the befynes of thocht,
2824 In beholding his ey departit nocht.

JEEN BEHOLDS THE BLACK KNIGHT.

The lady beholds him and
knows him; but yet inquires
who he is,

To quhom the lady of melyhalt beheld,
And knew hyme by *his* armour & *his* scheld,
Qwhat that he was; and thus sche laid one *hycht*:
2828 “Who is he 3one? who may he be, 3hone *knycht*,
So ftil that hovith and fterith not his Ren,
And feith the *knychtis* rynyng one the greñ?”

thus calling the attention of
Gawane,

Than al beholdith, and in princypale
2832 *Sir* gawan beholdith moft of all;
Of melyha[l]t the lady to hyme maid
Incontinent, his couche and gart be had
Be-fore o wyndew thore, as he mycht se
2836 The knyght, the oft, and al the affemble.
He lukith furth, and fone the knyght hath fen,

who saith to the queen:

And, but delay, he faith one to the qwen,

“Madam, remember that the red
knight halted where yon knight
halts.”

“Madem, if zhe remembir, fo it was
2840 The red knyght in to the famyne place
That wencuft al [at] the first affemble;
Whar that zone knyght howis, howit hee.”

“Why do you inquire?” she
replies.

“Zha,” *quod* the qwen, “rycht well remembir I;
2844 Qwhat is the cauß at zhe inquere, & quhy?”
“Madem, of [al] this larg warld is he

“He is the knight, madam,
whom I most desire to see.”

The knyght the wich I most defir to fee
His strenth, his manhed, his curag, and *his mycht*,
2848 Or do in armys that longith to o knyght.”

ORDER OF BATTLE.

[B]y thus, arthur, *with* confell well awyfit,

Arthur arranges his lines of
battle.

Haith ordanit his batellis, and devyfit:

King Ydrus leads the first;
The firft of them led ydrus king, & he
2852 O worthy man vas *nemmyt* for to bee.

Harwy the Reweyll, an aged

knight, the second.

The secund led harwy the Reweyll,
That in this world was knyght that had moft feill
For to prowid that longith to the were,
2856 One agit knyght, and well couth armys bere.

[Fol. 35 b.]

[T]he thrid feld [he] deliuerit in the hond

King Angus, a cousin of Arthur,
leads the third.

Of angus, king of ylys of scotlande,
Wich cufing was one to king arthur nere,
2860 One hardy knyght he was, *withouten* were.

King Ywons the fourth.

The ferd batell led ywons the king,
O manly knyght he was In to al thing.
And thus dewyfit ware his batellis fere,

In every company are 15,000.

2864 In euery feld xv thoufand were.

⁶⁶ MS. "firft." See [l. 2870](#).

[T]he fift ⁶⁶ batell the lord *fir* ywan lede,

The lord Sir Ywan leads the
rearguard.

Whois manhed was *in* euery cuntre dred,
Sone he was one to wryne the kyng,
2868 Forwart, ftout, hardy, wyß, and 3hing;
Xx thouland in his oft thai paf, t
Wich ordanit was for to affemble laft.

Galiot's armies.

[A]nd galiot, apone the tothir fyde,
2872 *Rycht* wyfly gan his batellis to dewid.

Malenginys leads the first line;

The firft of them led malenginys the king,
None hardyar In to this erth lewyng;
He neuer more out of his cuntre Raid,
2876 Nor he *with* hyme one hundereth knychtis hade.

the first-conquest king the
second; Walydeyne the third;

[T]he fecund the first-conqueft king led,
That for no perell of armys vas adred;
The thrid, o king clepit walydeyne,
2880 He led, and was o manly knycht, but weyne.

Clamedeus the fourth;

[T]he ferd, king clamedeus has,
Wich that lord of far ylys was.

and King Brandymagus the
fifth.

⁶⁷ MS. "firft."

The fift ⁶⁷ batell, whar xl thouland were,
2884 King brandymagus had to led and ftere,
O manly knycht, and prewit well oft-fyß,
And in his confell wonder fcharp & wyß.

Galiot bore no arms;

Galiot non armys bur that day,
2888 Nor as o knycht he wald hyme-felf aray,

but was arrayed as a servant in a
habergeon with a “prekyne” hat,
and a truncheon in his hand.

But as o *feruand* in o *habariowne*,
O *prekyne* hat, and ek o *gret trownfciowñ*
In til his hond, and one o *curfour* fet,
2892 The best that was in ony lond to get.
Endlong the rewar men *mycht* behold & fee,
Of *knychtis* weryne mony one affsemble;

The black knight still remains
looking towards the parapet.

And the blak *knycht* still he couth abyde,
2896 *Without* remowyng, one the Riwer fyde,
Bot to the bartes to behold and fee
Thar as his hart defyrit moft to bee:

RST MESSAGE TO THE BLACK KNIGHT.

The lady says to the queen—
And quhen the lady of *melyhalt* haith feñ

[Fol. 36 a.]

2900 The *knycht* fo stond, *ſche* ſaid one to the *qweñ*,

“Madam, pray commend
yourself to yon knight.”

“Madem, It is my confell at 3he send
One to 3one *knycht*, 3our-felf for to *commend*,
Befeiching hyme that he wald wndertak
2904 This day to do of armys, for 3our ſak.”

The queen replies
The quen anfuerit as that hir lykit *nocht*,
For othir thing was more In to hir *thocht*,
“For well 3he ſe the *perell* how *disio[i]nt*,
2908 The *adwentur* now ſtondith one the point
Boith of my lord his honore, and his lond,

⁶⁸ Stevenson reads “the”; but “the” is crossed out, and “in” written over it.
And of his men, in ⁶⁸ *danger* how thai ſtond:

that the lady and the rest may
send a message, but that she
will not herself take part in it.

Bot þhe, and ek thir vthere ladice may,
2912 If that yhow lykith, to the knyght gar lay
The mefag; is none that wil yhow let,
For I tharof fal nocht me entermet.”
On to the quen fcho faith, “her I,
2916 If so it pleß thir vthir ladice by,
Am for to fend one to the knyght content;”
And al the ladice can thar-to assent,
Befeching hir the mefag to dewyß,
2920 As fche that was moft prudent & moft wyß.

The lady sends a discreet
maiden,

Sche grantit, and o madeñ haith thai tone,
Discret, apone this mefag for till gone;

and Sir Gawane a squire, with
two spears,

And fir gawan a fqwyar bad alfo,
2924 With two fperis one to the knyght to go.
The lady than, withouten more dulay,
Haith chargit hir apone this wyß to fay:

to say that all the ladies, the
queen alone excepted,
commend them to the black
knight,

“Schaw to the knyght, the ladice euer-ilkone
2928 Ben In the court, excep the quen allon,
Til hyme them haith recommandit oft-fyß,
Befeching hyme of knyghthed and gentriß,
(Or if It hapyne euermore that he fhall
2932 Cum, quhar thai may, owther an or all,
In ony thing awail hyme or fupport,
Or do hyme ony plefans or comfort,)
and pray him to essay some

deed of arms.

He wold wichfaif for loue of them this day
2936 In armys sum manhed to affay;
And fay, *fir* gawan hyme the *speris* sent;
Now go, this is the fek of our entent.”

The damsel and squire

The damyfell *sche* hath hir palfray tone,
2940 The sqwyar *with* the *speris with* hir goñ;

[Fol. 36 b.]

The *nerest* way thai paß one to ye *knycht*,

repeat the message.

Whar *sche* repete hir *mesag* haith ful *rycht*:

NCELOT IS NOT CONTENT.

Sir Lancelot, finding the queen
not in the message,

And quhen he hard, and planly *wnderstude*,
2944 How that the quen not in the *mesag* *zude*,

was not content,

He *spak* no word, bot he was not *content*;
Bot, of *fir* gawan, glaid in his entent,
He *afkit* quhar he was, and of *his* fair?
2948 And thai to hyme the *maner* can *duclair*;

but asks the squire to hold the
two spears ready for him.

Than the *sqwyar* he prayth that he wold
Paß to the feld, the *speris* for to hold.
He saw the *knychtis* *semblyng* her and thare,
2952 The *stedis* *Rynyng with* the *fadillis* bare;
His *spuris* goith in to the *stedis* syde,
That was ful *fwyft*, and *lykit* not to byd;

IS UP SIR GAWANE'S TWO SPEARS.

And he that was hardy, *ferß*, and *stout*,

He attacks a company of a
hundred knights, slays the

nearest,

2956 Furth by o fyd affemblyng on a rout
Whar that one hundereth knyghtis was, & mo;
And *with* the firft has Recounterit so,
That frome the deth not helpith hym his fcheld,
2960 Boith horß and man is lying in the feld;
The fpere is gone, and al in pecis brak,

and with the stump of his spear
bereaves two or three of their
saddles.

And he the trunfcyoune in his hand hath tak
That two or thre he haith the fadillis reft,
2964 Whill in his hond fchortly no thing is left.
Syne, to the fquyar, of the feld is goñ,

He takes a new spear from the
squire, and overthrows three
knights.

Fro hyme o fpere In to his hond haith ton,
And to the feld returnyt he azayne:
2968 The firft he met, he goith one the plan,
And ek the next, and fyne the thrid alfo;
Nor in his hond, nore in his ftrak was ho.
His ennemys that veryng In affray
2972 Befor his ftrok, and makith rovm alway;
And in fch wyß ay in the feld he vrocht,
Whill that his fperis gon var al to *nocht*;
Whar-of *fir* gawan berith vitnefing
2976 Throw al this world that thar vas non levyng,
In fo fchort tyme fo mych of armys wrocht.

His spears gone, he returns to
his first position.

His fperis gone, out of the feld he *focht*,
And paffit is one to the Rewere syde,
2980 Rycht thore as he was wont for to abyde;

[Fol. 37 a.]

And fo beholdyne In the famyne plañ,

As to the feld hyme lykit nocht a3a~.

COND MESSAGE TO THE BLACK KNIGHT.

Sir Gawane says to the queen:

Sir gawan law, and faith on to the quen,

“Madam, yon knight thinks
himself despised, because you
so specially excepted yourself
in the message;

⁶⁹ “not” seems required.

2984 “Madem, yhone knyght disponit [not], ⁶⁹ I wey~,

To help ws more, fore he fo is awyfit;

As I prefume, he thinkith hyme dispifit

Of the mefag that we gart to hyme mak;

2988 Yhowre-felf yhe have fo fpecialy out-tak,

He thinkith ewill contempnit for to bee,

Confidering how that the neceffitee

Moft prinfpally to yhowr fupporting lyis.

2992 Tharfor my confell is, yhow to dewyß,

And ek 3howre-felf in yhowr trespas accuß,

ask him mercy, therefore, and
excuse your guilt.

And afk hyme mercy, and yhour gilt excuß.

For well it oucht o prince or o king

2996 Til honore and til cheriß in al thing

O worthi man, that is in knyched prewit.

For throw the body of o man efchevit

Mony o wondir, mony one aduenture,

3000 That merwell war til any creature.

And als oft-tyme is boith hard & fen,

For often, by one knight’s
prowess, have 40,000 been
worsted by 5,000.

Quhar xl thoufand haith difcumfit ben

Vith v thoufand, and only be o knyght;

3004 For throw his ftrenth, his vorfchip, & his mycht,

His falowfchip lich comfort of hym tais
That thai ne dreid the danger of thar fays.
And thus, madem, I wot, *withouten* were,

If yon knight will continue to
help the king,

3008 If that 3hone knyght this day will *perfywere*
With his manhed for helping of the king,
We fal have cauß to dred in to no thing.
Our folk of hyme thai fal lich comfort tak,
3012 And fo adred thar ennemys fal mak,
That fur I am, onys or the *nycht*,

yon folk shall perforce take to
flight.”

Of forß 3hone folk fal tak one them the *flycht*:
Wharffor, madem, that 3he have gilt to mend,
3016 My confell is one to 3hon knyght 3e fend.”

She consents to send a message.

“*Sir*,” *quod* fche, “quhat pleffith yhow to do
3he may dewyß, and I consent thar-to.”
Than was the lady of melyhalt *content*,
3020 And to *fir* gawan in-to-*contynent*

[Fol. 37 b.]

Sche clepit the maid, wich that paffit ar;

A maiden is therefore sent to
say,

And he hir bad the mefag thus duclar.

⁷⁰ “to” seems required.

“Say [to] ⁷⁰ the knyght, the quen hir recommendith,
3024 And fal correk in quhat that fche offendith
At his awn will, how fo hyme lift dewyß;

that the queen humbly exhorts
him

And hyme exortith, in most humyll wyß,
As euer he will, whar that fche can or may,
3028 Or powar haith hir charg, be ony way,

And for his worfchip and his hie manhede,

to help in that need to preserve
the king's honour, and to
deserve her thanks.

And for hir luf, to helpen in that ned

The kingis honore, his land fore to preferf,

3032 That he hir thonk for euer may deferf.”

WANE SENDS HIM TEN SPEARS MORE.

And four fquyaris chagit he alfo

Sir Gawane also sends four
squires with three horses and
ten spears.

With thre horß and fperis x to go

Furth to the knyght, hyme prayng for his fak,

3036 At his raquest thame in his ned to tak.

[T]he maden furth *with* the fqwylaris is went
One to the knyght, and fchawith *yar* entent.

The message heard, he inquires
about the queen,

Tho mefag hard, and ek ye present feñ,

3040 He anfwerit, and askith of the qwen;

and is told that from yon
parapet she can witness his
deeds.

⁷¹ A second “sche” is here required.

“Sir,” *quod* fche, [“sche” ⁷¹ in to 3hone bartiis lyis,

Whar that this day yhour dedis fal dewyß,

Yhowr manhed, yhour worfchip, and affere,

3044 How 3he *conteñ*, and how yhe armys bere;

The quen hir-felf, and many o lady to,

Sal Iugis be, and vitnes how yhe do.”

Than he, whois hart ftant in o new aray,

He returns a message that he is
the queen's knight.

3048 Saith, “damyceyll, on to my lady fay,

How euer that hir lykith that it bee,

Als far as wit or powar is in me,
I am hir knyght, I sal at hir *command*
3052 Do at I may, *withouten* more demand.
And to *sir* gawan, for his gret gentriß,
Me recommend and thonk a thouland fyß.”
With that o sper he takith in his hond,

He stands in his stirrups; and
seems to increase a foot in
height.

3056 And so in to his sterapis can he stond
That to *sir* gawan semyth that the knyght
Encrefyng gon o larg fut one hycht;
And to the ladice faith he, and the qwen,
3060 “3hon is the knyght that euer I have sen
In al my tyme moft knyghtly of affere,
And in hyme-felf gon fareft armys bere.”

ACK KNIGHT’S CHARGE.

[Fol. 38 a.]

[T]he knyght that haith Remembrit in his thocht
Greatly encouraged,
3064 The qwenys chargis, & how sche hym befocht,
Curag can encrefing to his hart;
His curfer lap, and gan onon to start;
And he the sqwaris haith reqwyrit so,
3068 That thai *with* hyme one to the feld wald go.

without delay he crosses over
the river to the field;

Than goith he one, *withouten* mor abaid,
And our the reuar to the feld he raid;
Don goith his spere onone In to the Rest,

and goes in wherever he sees
most peril.

3072 And in he goith, *withouten* mor areft,
Thar as he saw moft perell and moft dred

⁷² MS. "held."

In al the feld, and moft of help ⁷² had ned,
Whar femblyt was the firft-*conquest* king
3076 *With* mony o knyght that was in his leding.

He overthrows two knights.
The firft he met, doune goith boith horß & man;
The ſper was holl, and to the next he Rañ
That helpit hyme his hawbrek nor his ſcheld,
3080 Bot through and through haith perfit *in* the feld.

IGHTS FOLLOW HIM.

Sir Kay, Sir Sygramors, Sir
Gresown, Sir Ywan, Sir
Brandellis, and Gahers, all six
in a race spur across the field
with stretched spears,
Sir kay, the wich haith this encontyr fen,
His horß he ſtrekith our the larg gren,
And *fir* fygramors ek the defyrand,
3084 *With fir* greſown cummyth at *yar* honde,
Son of the duk, and alfua *fir* ywan
The baſtart, and *fir* brandellis onan,
And gaherß, wich that broyir was
3088 To gawan; thir ſex in a Raß
Deliuerly com prekand our the feldis
With ſperis ſtraucht, and couerit *with* thar ſcheldis;
Sum for love, ſum honor to purcherß,

and 100 knights after them.
3092 And aftir them one hundereth knyghtis was,
In famyne will, thar manhed to affay.
On his v falowis clepit than *fir* kay,

Sir Kay exhorts them
And ſaith them, "*firis*, thar has 3honder ben
3096 A courß that neuer-more farar was ſen
Maid be o knyght, and we ar cummyn ilkon

Only ws one [his] worfchip to difpone;
And neuer we in al our dais mycht
3100 Have bet axampil than iffith ws 3one knyght

to keep near the black knight,
and follow his guidance all day.

Of well doing; and her I hecht for me
Ner hyme al day, if that I may, to bee,
And folow hyme at al [my] mycht I fall,
3104 Bot deth or vthir adwentur me fall.”
With that thir fex, al in one affent,
With frefch curag In to the feld Is went.

[Fol. 38 b.]

The blak knyghtis fperre in pecis goñe,

With a second spear, the black
knight seeks the field, closely
followed by the six.

3108 Frome o fqwyar oñe vthir haith he toñe,
And to the feld onone he goith ful rycht;
Thir fex with hyme ay holdith at yar mycht.
And than bygan his wonderis in the feld;
3112 Thar was no helme, no hawbryk, nore no fcheld,

No knight nor armour can
withstand him.

Nor yhit no knyght fo hardy, ferß, nore ftout,
No 3hit no maner armour mycht hald owt
His ftrength, nore was of powar to withftond;
3116 So mych of armys dyde he with his honde,

Every wight wonders at his
deeds.

That euery wight ferleit of his deid,
And al his fois ftondith ful of dreid.
So befely he can his tyme difpend,
3120 That of the fperis wich fir gawan fend,

He uses up all Gawane's spears.

Holl of them all thar was not lewit oñe;
Throw wich but mercy to the deyth is gon

Ful many o knyght, and many o weriour,
3124 That couth fusten ful hardely o stour.

Two horses of his are killed,
and he fights on foot.

And of his horß supprifit ded ar two,
One of his awn, of gawanis one alfo,
And he one fut was fechtand one the gren,
3128 When that *sir* kay haith *with* his falowis señ;

The squire brings him a fresh
horse;

The sqwyar *with* his horß than to hym brocht;
Magre his fois he to his courfeir locht
Deliuerly, as of o mychty hart,

he leaps into the saddle without
stirrups.

3132 *Without* steropis in to his sadill start,
That euery wycht beholding mervell has
Of his strenth and deliuer befynes.

Y ASKS WHO THE BLACK KNIGHT IS.

Sir Kay asks who he is,

Sir kay, feing his horß, and how that thai
3136 War cled in to *sir* gawanis aray,
Alkith at the squyar if he knewith
What that he was, this knyght? & he hym schewith

but the squire cannot tell.

He wist no thing quhat that he was, nore hee
3140 Befor that day hyme neuer saw *with* Ee.
Than alkith he, how and one quhat wyß
On gawanis horß makith hyme sich seruice?
The sqw[y]ar saith, “forfuth y wot no more;
3144 My lord ws bad, I not the cauß quharfore.”

The black knight returns to the
field.

The blak knyght, horfit, to the feld can few

Als frefch as he was in the morow new;

The six comrades follow him.

The fex falowis folowit hyme ilkone,

3148 And al in front on to the feld ar goñ;

[Fol. 39 a.]

Rycht frefchly one thar ennemys thai foght,

And many o fair poynt of armys vroght.

Malangin's host is discomfited
by king Ydras; and retreats to
join the second line,
commanded by the Conquest-
king;

[T]han hapnyt to king malangins oft
3152 By ydras king difcumfit was, & loft,
And fled, and to the conquest-king ar goñe,
Thar boith the batellis affemblit In to one;
King malengynis in to his hart was wo,
3156 For of hyme-felf no better knyght mycht go;

so that 40,000 are now opposed
to 15,000 of Arthur's.

Thar xl thoufand war thai for xv.

Than mycht the feld rycht perellus be fen

Of armyt knyghtis gaping one the ground;

3160 Sum deith, and sum *with* mony a grewous wond;

For arthuris knyghtis, that manly war and gud,

Suppos that vthir was o multitude,

Refautit tham well at the fperis end;

3164 But one fuch wyß thai may not lang defend.

ACK KNIGHT'S PROWESS.

The black knight, knowing who
is beholding him,

The blak knyght faw the danger of the feld,

And al his doingis knowith quho beheld,

And ek remembrith in to his entent

3168 Of the mefag that fche haith to hyme fent:

Than curag, strenth encrefing *with* manhed,
Ful lyk o knyght one to the feld he raid,

thinks to have his lady's love, or
die before her.

Thinking to do his ladice love to have,
3172 Or than his deth befor hir to relave.

Thar he begynyth in his ferß curag
Of armys, as o lyoun in his rag;

Than merwell was his doing to behold;
3176 Thar was no knyght so strong, nor yhit so bold,
That in the feld befor his fuerd he met,
Nor he so hard his strok apone hyme set,
That ded or wondit to the erth he focht;

He works nothing but wonders;
3180 For thar was not bot wonderis that he wrocht.
And magre of his fois euerilkone,

and often passes alone through
the field.

In to the feld oft tymys hyme aloñ
Throuch and throuch he passith to & fro;

⁷³ Another spelling of *world*, i.e. world, which occurs in the fuller form in [l. 3212](#).

3184 For in the ward ⁷³ it was the maner tho
That non o knyght shuld be the brydill tak
Hyme to oreft, nore cum behynd his bak,
Nor mo than on at onys one o knyght
3188 Shuld strik, for that tyme worschip ftud so rycht.
3hit was the feld rycht perellus and strong
Till arthuris folk, set thai *contenyt* longe;

[Fol. 39 b.]

Bot in sich wyß this blak knyght can *conten*,

He fights in such wise as to
encourage all who see his
deeds.

3192 That thai, the wich that hath his manhed señ,
Sich hardyment haith takyne In his ded,

Them thocht thai had no maner cauß of dred,
Als long as he mycht owthir ryd or go,
3196 At euery ned he them recomfort fo.

Sir Kay and his fellows follow
him all day.

Sir kay haith *with* his falowis al the day
Folowit hyme al that he can or may,
And wondir well thai have in armys *prewit*,
3200 And *with* thar manhed oft thar folk relewit;
Bot well thai faucht in diuerß placis fere,

But at last they are nearly all
overpowered by numbers.

With multitud *yar* folk confufit were,
That long in sich wyß mycht thai nocht *conten*.

Y'S MESSAGE TO SIR HARWY.

Sir Kay sends Gawane's squire
with a message to Sir Harwy
that he ought not to suffer the
best knight that ever bore arms
to be surprised,

3204 *Sir* kay, that hath *fir* gawans qfquyaris fen,
He clepit hyme, and haith hyme prayt fo,
That to *fir* harwy the rewell wil he go,
And fay to hyme, "ws think hyme ewil awyfit;
3208 For her through hyme he sufferit be supprifit
The beft knyght that euer armys bur;
And if it so befell of adwentur,
In his defalt, that he be ded or lamyt,
3212 This world fal have hyme vtraly defamyt.

nor six knights of the Round
Table to be discomfited.

And her ar of the round table alfo
A faloufchip, that fall in well and wo
Abid *with* hyme, and furth for to endur
3216 Of lyf or deth, this day, thar adwentur;

And if so fal discumfyt at thai bee,
The king may say that wonder ewill haith he
Contentit hyme, and kepit his honore,
3220 Thus for to tyne of chevalry the flour!”

The squire takes the message.

The sqw[y]ar hard, and furth his way Raid,
In termys schort he al his mefag laid.
Sir harwy faith, “y wytneß god, that I
3224 Neuer in my days comytit tratory,
And if I now begyne In to myne eld,
In ewill tyme fyrft com I to this feld;

Sir Harwy says that Sir Kay
shall have no cause to reprove
him.

Bot, if god will, I fal me fon discharg.
3228 Say to *fir* kay, I fal not ber the charg,
He fal no mater have me to rapref,
I fal amend this mys if that I lef.”
The sqwyar went and tellit to *fir* kay;

IT'S FOLK ARE WORSTED.

Sir Harwy comes to support
them;

3232 **A**nd *fir* harwy, in al the haft he may,
Affemblyt hath his oftis, & onon

[Fol. 40 a.]

In gret defyre on the feld is gon
Before his folk, and haldith furth his way;
3236 Don goith his sper, and ewyne before *fir* kay
So hard o knyght he ftrykith in his ten
That horß and he lay boith apone the gren.
Sir gawan saw the counter that he maad,
3240 And leuch for al the farues that he had:

and proves himself a better
warrior than might have been
expected of one so old.

That day *fir* harwy prewyt in the feld
Of armys more than longith to his eld,
For he was more than fyfty yher of ag,
3244 Set he was ferß and 3ong in his curag;
And fro that he assemblyt his bataill

Galiot's folk are beaten.

Doune goith the folk of galotis al haille;
For to *withstond* thai war of no poware,
3248 And yhit of folk x thousand mo thei vare.

King Valydone comes to
support them.

K yng valydone, that fauch on fuch o wyß
His falowis dangerit *with* thar ennemys,
With al his folk, being freß and new,
3252 Goith to the feld onon, them to reßkew;
Thar was the feld *rycht* perellus a3aÑe,
Of arthuris folk ful many on var flan.

Angus comes to aid Arthur's
men.

B ot angus, quhich that lykith not to bid,
3256 And saw the perell one the tother fid,
His fted he ftrok, and *with* his oft is gon
Whar was moft ned, and thar the feld has ton.

Clamedyus comes to aid
Galiot's men.

K yng clamedyus makith non abaid,

3260 Bot *with* his oft one to the lid he raid.

Ywons encounters Clamedyus.

And ywons king, that haith his *cummyn* fen,
Encounterit hyme in myddis of the greñ.
The aucht batellis affemblyt one this wiß;

Great clamour and lamentable
cries on either side.

3264 On ather half the clamore and the cryið
Was lametable and petws for til her,
Of *knychtis* wich in diuerß placis fere
Wondit war, and fallyng to and fro,
3268 3hit galyotis folk war xx thoufand mo.

ACK KNIGHT'S DARING RESOLUTION.

The black knight bids himself
remember love's power over
him;

The blak *knycht* than on to hyme-felf he laid:
“Remembir the, how yhow haith ben araid,
Ay fen ye hour that yow was makid *knycht*,
3272 *With* love, azane quhois powar & whois *mycht*
Yow haith no strenth, yow may It not endur,
Nor 3hit non vthir erthly creatur;

and that only his lady's mercy
or his life's end can amend him.

And bot two thingis ar the to amend,
3276 Thi ladice mercy, or thi lyvys end.
And well yhow wot that on to hir *prefens*,

[Fol. 40 b.]

Til hir estat, nor til hir excellens,
Thi febilneß neuermore is able
3280 For to attan, fche is fo honorable.

And fen no way yow may fo hie extend,

He counsels himself to strive
for her thanks,

My verray confell is, that yow pretend

This day, (fen yow becummyne art hir knyght

3284 Of hir comand, and fechtit in hir fycht),

And well yow schaw, fen yow may do no mor,

That of refone fche fal the thank tharfore;

and to be ashamed of every
point of cowardice.

Of euery poynt of cowardy yow fcham,

3288 And in til armys purches the fum nam.”

With that of love in to o new defir

Swift as a crossbow-bolt he
seeks the field.

His fpere he ftraucht, and fwift as any wyre

With al his forß the nereft feld he foght;

3292 His ful ftrenth in armys thar he vroght,

In to the feld rufching to and fro,

Doune goith the man, doune goith the horß also;

Sum throw the fcheld is perfit to the hart,

3296 Sum throw the hed, he may It not aftar.

His sword carves the head from
some, and cuts the arms of
others in twain.

His bludy fuerd he dreuch, that carwit fo

Fro fum the hed, and fum the arm in two;

Sum in the feld fellit is in fwoñ,

3300 Throw fum his fuerd goith to the fadill doune.

His fois waren abafit of his dedis,

His mortell ftrok fo gretly for to dred Is;

When his foes see him, they
leave the place for dread of
death.

Whar thai hyme faw, *within* a lytall fpace,

3304 For dreid of ded, thai levyng hyme the place,

That many o strok ful oft he haith forlorñ;
The spedý horß away the knyght hath borñ.
In to his wyrking neuermore he lest,
3308 Nor non abaid he makith, nor areft.

His knightly deeds assure his
fellows.

His falowis, fo in his knyghthed affuryd,
Thai ar recomfort, thar manhed is recoueryt,
And one thar fois ful ferfly thai foght,
3312 Thar goith the lyf of many o knyght to nocht.
So was the batell wonderful to tell,
Of knyghtis to fe the multitud that fell,

It was pitiful to see the knights
gaping upon the green.

That pety was til ony knyght to feñ
3316 The knyghtis lying gaping on the gren.
The blak knyght ay continewit so fast,

⁷⁴ MS. "Whilk."

Whill ⁷⁴ many one, difcumfit at the laft,

[Fol. 41 a.]

Are fled, and planly of the feld thei pas:

¶ WONDERS WHY HIS MEN FLEE.

Galiot asks his men why they
flee.

3320 And galyot haith wondyr, for he was
Of mor powar, and askit at them qwhy
As cowntis thai fled fa fchamfully?

A knight replies, that whoever
likes may go and see marvels.

Than faith o knyght, for wondit in the brayne,
3324 "Who lykith, he may Retwrn azayne
Frome qwhens we come, merwalis for to fee,
That in his tyme neuer fych fauch hee."

Galiot asks, what marvels; and
the knight tells him there is a

knight who vanquishes all;
“Marwell,” *quod* he, “that dar I boldly fay
3328 Thay may be callit, and quhat thai ar, I pray?”
“Schir, in the feld forfuth thar is o *knycht*,
That only throw his body and his *mycht*
Wenculfith all, that thar may non fulten
3332 His ftrokis, thai ar fo fureows and ken.

who fares as a lion or a bear;
He farith as o lyone or o beyre,
Wod in his rag, for lich is his affere.

to whom the red knight hears no
comparison.
Nor he the *knycht* in to the armys Red,
3336 Wich at the first affemble in this fted
Wenculfith all, and had the holl renown,
He may to this be no *comparyfoune*,
Fore neuer he felfith fen the day vas goñ,
3340 Bot euermore *continewit* in to one.”

Galiot says he will go and see.
Quod galiot, “in nome of god and we
Al, be tyme, the futhfastneß fal see.”

¶ RALLIES HIS MEN.

Galiot is armed, rallies the
flyers, and encourages his men.
[T]han he in armys that he had is gon,
3344 And to the feld *with* hyme a3ane hath ton

⁷⁵ The sense, but not the metre, requires “in.”
Al the flear*is*, and foundyne [in] ⁷⁵ lich aray
His folk, that ner difcumfyt al war thay;
Bot quhen thai faw *cummyne* our the plan
3348 Thar lord, thai tuk lich hardement a3añ,

They shout their war-cries.
That thar effen3eis lowd thai gon to cry.
He chargit tham to go, that ware hyme by,

Straucht to the feld, *with* al thar holl forß;
3352 And thai, the wich that sparit not the horß,
All redy war to fillyng his *command*,
And frefchly went, *withowten* more demand:
Throw qwich thar folk recoueryt haith thar place,

All think a new host is coming.

3356 For al the feld *prefwmyt* that thar was
O new oft, one fuch o wyß thai foght;

Arthur's folk determine rather
to die than fly.

Whar arthuris folk had passith al to *nocht*,
Ne war that thai the better war ilkoñe,
3360 And at thai can them vtraly dispoñe

[Fol. 41 b.]

Rathar to dee than flee, in thar entent,
And of the blak *knycht* haith sich hardyment;
For at al perell, al harmys, and myschef,
3364 In tyme of ned he can tham al ralef.

[T]har was the batell *dangerus* & strong,
Gret was the pres, *bath* perellus & throng;

The black knight is borne to the
ground.

The blak *knycht* is born on to the ground,
3368 His horß hyme falyth, that fellith dethis wound.

The six comrades go to the
earth.

The vi falowis, that falowit hyme al day,
Sich was the preß, that to the erth go thay;
And thar in myd among his ennemys
3372 He was about enclofit one sich wyß

None know where he is.

That quhare he was non of [his] falowis knew,
Nor *mycht* *nocht* cum to help hyme, nore reskew.
And thus among his ennemys allon

He defends himself with his

sword.

3376 His nakid fuerd out of his hond haith ton;
And thar he *prewit* his wertew & his *strenth*;
For thar was none *within* the fuerdis lenth
That came, bot he goith to confusioune.

No helm nor habergeon may
resist his sword.

3380 Thar was no helme, thar was no habirioune,
That may refist his fuerd, he *smytith* so;
One euery *fyd* he helpith to and fro,
That al about the compas thai *mycht* ken;
3384 The ded horß lyith *virflyng* *with* the men.
Thai hyme affalzeing *both with* scheld & spere,

He fares like a bear at the stake,
that snubs the hardy hounds.

And he azane; as at the stok the bere
Snybbith the hardy houndis that ar ken,
3388 So farith he; for neuer *mycht* be fen
His fuerd to rest, that in the gret rout
He rowmyth all the compas hyme about.

¶ WONDERS AT LANCELOT'S PROWESS.

[A]nd galiot, beholding his manhed,

Galiot wonders at his deeds;

3392 *Within* his-self wonderith of his ded,
How that the body only of o knyght
Haith sich o *strenth*, haith sich affere & *mycht*;
Than faid he thus, "I wald not that throw me,

and says that such a knight shall
not die on his account.

3396 Or for my cauß, that such o knyght fuld dee,
To conquer all this world that is so larg."
His horß than can he *with* his spuris charg,
A gret trunfioune In to his hond hath ton,
3400 And in the thikeft of the preß is goñ,

He charges all his folk to cease;
And al his folk chargit he to seß.
At his *command* thai levyng al the preß;

[Fol. 42 a.]

And quhen he had departit all the rout,
3404 He laid, “*fir knycht*, havith now no dout.”
Wich anwerit, “I have no cauß to dred.”

and assures the black knight
that he will himself warrant him
from all harm.

“*3is*,” *quod* he, “*fa euer* god me *sped*,
Bot apone fut quhill *3e* ar fechtand here,
3408 And yhow defendith apone sich manere,
So hardely, and ek so lyk o *knycht*,
I fal my-felf *with* al my holl *mycht*
Be yhour defens, and varand fra al harmys;
3412 Bot had yhe left of worfchip In til armys,
What I have don I wold apone no wyß;
Bot sen yhe ar of *knychthed* so to prys,

⁷⁶ MS. “falt.”

3he fal ⁷⁶ no maner cauß have for to dred:

He offers him as many horses as
he needs; and proposes that they
shall never again part.

3416 And fet yhour horß be falit at this ned,
Displeß yhow not, for-quhy *3e* fal not want
Als many as yhow lykith for to hawnt;

¶ GIVES LANCELOT HIS OWN HORSE.

And I my-felf, I fal yhowr *sqwyar* bee,
3420 And, if god will, *neuer* more fal wee

He 'lights from his horse, and
gives him to Lancelot, who
thanks him.

Depart,” *with* that, anon he can to lycht
Doune frome his horß, and gaf hyme to y^e *knycht*.

The lord he thonkit, and the horß hath ton,
3424 And als so fresch one to the feld is gon,
As at no strokis he that day had ben.
His falowis glad, one horß that hath hym fen,
To galiot one vthir horß thai broght;
3428 And he goith one, and frome the feld he focht,

Galiot returns to his host, and
chooses a band of 10,000 men.

And to the plan quhar that his oftis were;
And brandymagus chargit he to ftere
Efter hyme, within a lytill fpace,
3432 And x thoufand he takyne *with* hym haß.

Towart the feld onon he can to Rid,
And chargit them befor ye oft to byd.

The trumpets, clarions, horns,
and bugles are sounded.

Wp goith the trumpetis, and the claryownis,
3436 Hornys, bugillis blawing furth thar fownis,
That al the cuntre refownit hath about;

Arthur's folk despair.

Than arthuris folk var in dispar & dout,
That hard the noys, and saw the multitud
3440 Of fresch folk; thai cam as thai war wod.

LOT HARANGUES ARTHUR'S HOST.

The sable knight, still fearless,

[B]ot he that was *withowten* any dred,
In fabill cled, and saw the gret ned,
Affemblyt al his falowis, and arayd;

harangues his men, saying,

3444 And thus to them in manly termes laid:

[Fol. 42 b.]

“What that 3e ar I knaw not yhour estat,

“I know not who ye are, but I
know that ye ought to be
commended.

Bot of manhed and worfchip, well I wat,
Out throuch this world yhe aw to be *commendit*,
3448 This day 3e have so knyghtly yhow defendit.

Ye see how your enemies, as
night approaches, are striving to
give you an outrage or a fright.

And now yhe see how that, a3anis the nycht,
Yhour ennemys pretendit *with* thar myght
Of multitud, and *with* thar new oft,
3452 And *with* thar buglis and thar wyndis boft
Freschly cummyng In to lich aray,

⁷⁷ MS. "owtray." See Glossary.

To ifyne yhow one owtrag⁷⁷ or affray.
And now almost cummyne Is the nycht,

Employ then your courage, so
that the honour ye have won be
not again lost.

3456 Quharfor yhour strenth, yhour curag, & yhovr mycht

Yhe occupye in to fo manly wyß,
That the worfchip of knychthed & empryß
That yhe have wonyng, and ye gret renown

3460 Be not yloft, be not ylaid doune.

For one hour the fufferyng of diftreß,
Gret harm It war yhe tyne the hie encreß
Of vorfchip, feruit al this day before.

3464 And to yhow al my confell is, tharfore,

Resolve then to meet them
sharply, without fear, so that
they may feel the cold spear in
their hearts.

With manly curag, but radour, yhe pretend
To met tham fcharply at the fperis end,
So that thei feil the cold fperis poynt
3468 Out-throw thar fcheldis, in thar hartis poynt.
So fal thai fynd we ar no-thing affrayt;
Whar-through we fall the well leß be affayt.

Perhaps then the foremost will
make the rest afraid."

If that we met them fcharply in the berd,
3472 The formeft fal mak al the laif afferd."
And with o woyß thai cry al, "fir knycht,
Apone yhour manhed, and yhour gret mycht,

They promise to stand firm.

We fal abid, for no man fhall efchef
3476 Frome yhow this day, his manhed for to pref."

Sir Yvan also bids his men be
comforted; for that they see all

the strength of their enemies.

And to his oft the lord *fir* yvane said,
“Yhe comfort yow, yhe be no-thing affrayd,
Ws ned no more to dreding of suppriß;
3480 We fe the strenth of al our ennemys.”
Thus he said, for he wend thai var no mo,

Sir Gawane, however, knew
better.

Bot *fir* gawan knew well It vas not so;
For al the oftis mycht he fe al day,
3484 And the gret hofst he saw quhar yat it lay.

THEM ABRUPTLY ENDS.

Galiot also exhorts his men.

[A]nd galiot he can his folk exort,
Befeching them to be of good comfort,
And lich encounter

[*The rest is wanting.*]

NOTES.

[It may be observed, once for all, that the expression *in to* repeatedly occurs where we should simply use *in*; and *one to* is in like manner put for *unto*. The ending *-ith* (for *-ed*) is frequent in the past tense, and *-it* (also for *-ed*) in the past participle, though this distinction is not always observed. A still more noticeable ending is *-ing* (for *-en*) in the infinitive. Observe further that the letters *v*, *u*, and *w* are perfectly convertible, and used quite indiscriminately; so that *wpone* means *upon*; *vthir* means *uthir*, i.e., *other*: *our* is put for *over*; *vounde* signifies *wound*, etc.]

Page 1, [line 1](#). *The soft morow*. This nominative case has no verb. A similar construction occurs in the first lines of Books II. and III.

[4](#). *Uprisith*—*his hot courss*, Upriseth in his hot course; *chare*, chariot.

[6](#). *sent*, sendeth; so also *stant*, standeth, [l. 326](#).

[8](#). *valkyne*, waken.

[10](#). *gyrss*, grass.

[11](#). *assay*, assault.

[13](#). *wox*, voice.

[17](#). *frome I can*, from the time that I did.

[18](#). *It deuit me*, it availed me. Jamieson gives “*Dow*, 1. to be able; A.S. *dugan* (*valere*), to be able. 2. to avail; Teut. *doogen*.”

P. 2, [l. 23](#). *hewy 3erys*, heavy years.

[24](#). “Until that Phœbus had thrice gone through his full circuits” (lit. spheres).

See the peculiar use of “*pas*” in other places.

[26](#). “So, by such a manner, was my lot fated;” see [l. 41](#).

[28](#). *carving can*, did cut.

[30](#). *be the morow*, by the morn.

[36](#). *neulyngis*, newly, anew.

[43.](#) *walkith*, walked.

[50.](#) *I-clede*, y-clad, clad. Ch. has *clede*.

[54.](#) “No one within thought he could be seen by any wight outside.”

P. 3, [l. 56.](#) *clos it*, enclose it; the MS. has *closit*.

[57.](#) *alphest*. This reading of the MS. is an error for *alcest*. See Chaucer, Prologue to Legend of good women, l. 511:

“The grete goodnesse of the quene Alceste,
That turned was into a dayesye,”

Alceste being the contracted form of Alcestis.

[59.](#) *Wnclosing gane*, did uncloze.

[60.](#) “The bright sun had illumined the spray, and had updrawn (upwarped) into the lusty air the night’s soft (sober) and moist showers; and had made the morning soft, pleasant, and fair.” With this difficult passage we should compare [l. 2477](#).

[66.](#) *Quhill*, until.

[67.](#) *till ony vicht*, to any wight.

[69.](#) *Bot gladness til the thochtful, euer mo*, etc., “But, as for gladness to the melancholy man, evermore the more he seeth of it, the more wo he hath.”

[73.](#) *represent*, represented (accented on the second syllable).

[74.](#) *Al day gan be sor*, etc., “All the day, my spirit began to dwell in torment, through sorrow of thought;” *be sor*, by sorrow (A.S. *sorh*).

[77.](#) *Ore slep, or how I wot*, “Or sleep, ere I knew how.”

[83.](#) *A-licht*, alighted.

[84.](#) *levis in to were*, livest in doubt.

P. 4, [l. 91.](#) *be morow*, by morrow; at early morn.

[99.](#) *set*, although.

[103.](#) *weil accorde*, very fitting.

[105.](#) *long ore he be sonde*, (It is) long ere he be sound.

[108.](#) *seith, for to consel*, saith, that as for concealing or shewing, etc.

[109.](#) *althir-best*, lit. best of all; see Chaucer’s use of *alderfirst*, *alderlast*.

P. 5, [l. 127.](#) *lat be thi nyss dispare*, let be thy nice (foolish) despair.

[128.](#) *erith*, earth.

[134.](#) *schall hyme hating*, shall hate him. The termination *-ing* is here the sign of the infinitive mood after the verb *shall*.

[140.](#) *Set*, although.

[146.](#) *tak one hand and mak*, undertake and compose; *trety*, treatise; *vnkouth*, unknown, new.

[151.](#) *belevis*, believe will please thy lady.

[160.](#) *yis*, this.

P. 6, [l. 161.](#) *troucht*, truth.

[163.](#) *discharge*, release.

[170.](#) *spir*, sphere.

[171.](#) “At command of a wise (god from) whose vision,” etc. We sometimes find in old English the adjective “a wise” used absolutely for “a wise man.” See “Le Morte Arthur,” ed. F. J. Furnivall, l. 3318.

[175.](#) *tynt*, lost.

[177.](#) *be this worldis fame*. Here again, as in many other passages, “be” expresses with relation to, as regards.

[185.](#) *yaim*, them.

[191.](#) *demande*, demur.

P. 7, [l. 198.](#) *Quhill*, until.

[200.](#) *conten*, treat; lit. contain.

[202.](#) Lancelot is here called the son of Ban, king of Albanak; so again in [l. 1447.](#)

[204.](#) *redis*, read.

[214.](#) “I will not waste my efforts thereupon.”

[219.](#) *wnwyst*, unwist, unknown.

[225.](#) *nome*, name.

[226.](#) *Iwondit to the stak*, very deeply wounded; but there is no doubt about the origin of the phrase. See Glossary.

[228.](#) *astart*, get rid of it, escape it.

P. 8, [l. 240.](#) *dedenyt to aras*, deigned to pluck out.

[244.](#) *hurtare*, hurter.

[245.](#) *Iwond*, wounded.

[248.](#) *ful wicht*, full nimble.

[251.](#) *of quhome*, by whom.

[253.](#) *send*, sent.

[257.](#) *pasing vassolag*, surpassing prowess.

[260.](#) “Passed down into the fell caves.”

[264.](#) *tane*, taken.

[266.](#) *cwre*, care.

P. 9, [l. 267.](#) *gart be maid*, caused to be made.

[271.](#) *awoue*, vow.

[275.](#) *in to that gret Revare*, in that great river.

[284.](#) *o gret confusione of pupil and knyghtis*, al enarmyt, a great medley of people and knights, all fully armed. Stevenson actually reads *unarmyt*!

[294.](#) *I wil report*; both here and in [l. 320](#) we should almost expect to find “*I nil report*,” i.e. I will not tell. It must mean, “I will tell you why I omit to mention these things.” Compare lines [266](#), [320](#).

[297.](#) *thing*, think.

P. 10, [l. 305.](#) *veris*, wars.

[306.](#) *be the wais*, by the ways.

[307.](#) *Tuex*, betwixt; *accorde*, agreement.

[314.](#) *mot*, must.

[316.](#) *stek*, concluded.

[319.](#) *most conpilour*, very great composer.

[320.](#) “As to whose name I will only say, that it is unfit,” etc.

[326.](#) *stant*, standeth.

[328.](#) *yroung*, rung.

[330.](#) *beith*, shall be; observe the *future* sense of *beith* in this place.

[331.](#) *suet*, sweet.

[332.](#) “His soul in bliss preserved be on that account.”

[334.](#) *and this endit*. Whether *endit* here refers to *inditing* or *ending* is perhaps doubtful.

NOTES TO BOOK I.

P. 11, [l. 336](#). If by *aryeit* is here meant the *sign*, not the *constellation* of Aries, the day referred to is April 1 or 2, according to Chaucer’s “Astrolabie.”

[338.](#) *bewis*, boughs.

[340.](#) *makyne gone*, did make.

[341.](#) *in ther chere*, after their fashion. (For *chere*, see Glossary.)

[345.](#) *auerding to*, belonging to.

[351.](#) *Anoit*, annoyed.

[352.](#) *For why*, wherefore; so also *for-thi*, therefore.

[354.](#) *can*, began.

[355.](#) *sende*, sent.

[358.](#) *heryng*, hear (infin. mood). In the next line it occurs as a present participle.

[362.](#) *to pas hyme*, to go, depart.

[364.](#) *meit*, to dream of; *aperans*, an appearance, apparition.

P. 12, [l. 365.](#) *hore*, hair.

[375.](#) *vombe*, womb; hence bowels.

[377.](#) *stert*, started.

[384.](#) *gert*, caused.

[390.](#) *traist*, trust.

[397.](#) *demande*, demur, delay.

[398.](#) *at*, that.

P. 13, [l. 407.](#) *whill*, until.

[408.](#) *the*, they.

[410.](#) *to viting*, to know.

[412.](#) *shauyth al hall*, sheweth all whole.

[414.](#) *chesith*, chooseth.

[422.](#) *shire*, sir.

[424.](#) *fore to awysing*, in order to take counsel. 432. All this about *astronomy* (i.e. astrology) should be compared with Gower; Conf. Amantis, lib. vii; ed. Pauli, vol. 3, pp. 133, 134. Arachell, Nembrote, Moises, Hermes are there mentioned as astrologers.

[433.](#) The MS. has “set” (*not* with a long s). Mr Stevenson has “fet,” which would seem right.

P. 14, [l. 435.](#) *nembrot*, Nimrod; see *Genesis and Exodus* (E.E.T.S.), l. 659.

[436.](#) *herynes*, miswritten for *herymes*, i.e. Hermes.

[439.](#) “The which they found were wondrously evil set.”

[440.](#) *his sweuen met*, dreamed his dream.

[443.](#) *waryng in to were*, were in doubt.

- [444.](#) *danger*, power to punish; compare Shakspeare's use of the word.
[457.](#) *but delay*, without delay.
[459.](#) *stondith heuy cherith*, stood heavy-cheered, was sad in his demeanour.
[465.](#) *fundyng*, found.
[466.](#) *depend to*, depend upon.

P. 15, [l. 475.](#) *tone*, taken.

- [478.](#) *assey*, test.
[481.](#) *record*, to tell out, speak.
[487.](#) *preseruith It allan*, is preserved alone.
[499.](#) *affy in-tyll*, rely upon.
[500.](#) *failye*, fail.
[504.](#) *there clergy*, their science.

P. 16, [l. 519.](#) "Through the watery lion, who is also faithful, and through the leech and eke the water also, and through the counsel of the flower." It is very possible this passage is partly corrupt; [l. 520](#) should certainly be (as may be seen from lines [2010](#), [2056](#)),

"And through the leich withouten medysyne."

The meanings of lion, leech, and flower are fully explained, however, in lines [2013-2120](#).

- [524.](#) *weyne*, vain.
[527.](#) *passid nat his thoght*, left not his thoughts.
[531.](#) *rachis*, braches, dogs.
[533.](#) *grewhundis*, grayhounds.
[536.](#) This purely conjectural line is merely inserted to carry on the sense. It is imitated from line 3293. In the next line we should read "grewhundis," rather than "grewhund."
[538.](#) *Befor ther hedis*, before their heads.

P. 17, [l. 545.](#) "All armed, as was then the fashion."

- [546.](#) *salust*, saluted.
[548.](#) *kend*, known.
[549.](#) *leuyth*, liveth.
[552.](#) The rime requires "land," as in [l. 638](#).
[553.](#) *yald hyme our*, yield him over.

[554.](#) *if tribut*, give tribute.

[566.](#) *recist*, resist; *mone bee*, must be.

[568.](#) *be*, by.

[569.](#) *day moneth day*, ere this day month; comp. [l. 1162](#).

P. 18, [l. 577](#). *fairhed*, fair-hood, beauty.

[587.](#) *magre myne entent*, in spite of my intention.

[591.](#) *nome*, took.

[593.](#) *Inquere at*, inquire of.

[596.](#) *wes*, was.

[599.](#) *rase*, rose.

[605.](#) *accordith*, agree thereto.

[606.](#) *recordith*, belongith.

[607.](#) *visare*, wiser.

P. 19, [l. 621](#). *This spek I lest*, this I list to speak.

[622.](#) *varnit*, warned.

[626.](#) “Though the season of the year was contrary.”

[627.](#) *atte*, at the.

[629.](#) *the ilk*, that (Scotch *thilk*).

[632.](#) *Melyhalt*, the name both of a hill, and of the town built upon it.

[636.](#) *affray*, terror.

[642.](#) *wnconquest*, unconquered.

[643.](#) *cwre*, care.

P. 20, [l. 649](#). *nemmyt*, named.

[652.](#) *were*, war.

[654.](#) *or than to morn*, earlier than to-morrow.

[660.](#) *our few*, over few.

[677.](#) *northeast*, north-east.

P. 21, [l. 686](#). *fechteris*, fighters.

[688.](#) *holde*, held.

[691.](#) *presone*, prison.

[697.](#) *peite*, pity.

[699.](#) The metre of Lancelot’s lament is that of Chaucer’s “Cuckoo and Nightingale,” and was very possibly copied from it. *Qwhat haue y gilt*,

what crime have I committed.

[702.](#) *ago*, gone.

[703.](#) *nat*, naught; *me glaid*, gladden me.

[706.](#) *til haue*, to have.

[709.](#) *Sen thelke tyme*, since that time.

P. 22, [l. 718.](#) *of remed*, for a remedy.

[719.](#) *sesith*, ceaseth.

[723.](#) *with this lady*, by this lady.

[728.](#) *laisere*, leisure.

[731.](#) *diuerss wais sere*, divers several ways.

[733.](#) *bur*, bore.

[735.](#) *cher*, car.

[740.](#) *dout*, to fear.

[745.](#) *but were*, without doubt. This expression often occurs.

P. 23, [l. 751.](#) *few menye*, small company; an oddly sounding expression to modern ears.

[753.](#) *cold*, called.

[754.](#) *hot*, hight, was named.

[755.](#) *but in his cumpany*, unless he had with him.

[757.](#) *He saith*; the speaker is the captain of the hundred knights, called in [l. 806](#) *Maleginis*.

[768.](#) *als fell*, just as many.

[777.](#) *hard*, heard.

[781.](#) *clepit*, called.

P. 24, [l. 793.](#) *as he wel couth*, as he well knew how.

[796.](#) *sen*, seen.

[800.](#) *sen*, since.

[806.](#) *was hot*, was hight, was named.

[809.](#) *In myde the borde and festinit in the stell*, In the midst they encounter, and fastened in the steel. See [l. 850](#).

[812.](#) *Rout*, company.

[815.](#) *ferde*, fourth.

[817.](#) *sauch thar latter batell steir*, saw their last division stir.

P. 25, [l. 820](#). *gane his mortall fell*. A word seems here omitted; if after *mortall* we insert *strokis*, the sense will be, “His enemies began his mortall strokes to feel.”

[825](#). *worth*, worthy. It would improve the metre to read *worthy* ([l. 875](#)).

[828](#). *In to were*, in war, in the strife.

[829](#). *hyme bure*, bore himself.

[839](#). *to-for*, heretofore.

[841](#). *Atour*, i.e. *at over*, across.

[842](#). *assall*, assault. The rime shews we should read *assaill*, as in [l. 855](#).

[849](#). *socht atour*, made their way across. The use of *seke* in Early English is curious.

P. 26, [l. 861](#). *setith his payn vpone*, devotes his endeavours to.

[868](#). *al to-kerwith*, wholly cutteth in pieces.

[880](#). *dirk*, dark.

[883](#). *tan and slan*, taken and slain.

P. 27, [l. 895](#). It frequently occurs in the MS. that a space is left at the beginning of a line, and the first letter of the line is omitted. It is evident that the intention was that the first letter should be illuminated, and that this, after all, was not done. Here, for instance, the T is omitted, as indicated by the square brackets. So also in [l. 1083](#), etc.

[897](#). *pasing home*, go home.

[899](#). *was vent*, had gone.

[905](#). *dulay*, delay. So also *duclar* for *declare*.

[907](#). *comyne*, came.

[908](#). *ill paid*, displeased.

[909](#). *homly*, humbly. Stevenson reads *hourly*, but this is wrong; see [l. 914](#).

[911](#). *carful*, full of care, unhappy.

[912](#). *withouten were*, without doubt.

[914](#). *lawly*, lowly.

[918](#). *wight*, with (unusual, and perhaps wrong).

P. 28, [l. 924](#). *leife*, live.

[929](#). *eft*, after.

[933](#). *thar longith*, there belongeth.

[943](#). *I was for til excuss*, I had some excuse.

[944.](#) “Because I did behove (to do it), out of very need.”

[946.](#) *lefe it but*, leave it without.

[953.](#) *ma*, make.

[954.](#) *ga*, go.

[955.](#) *of new*, anew.

[958.](#) *But if that deth or other lat certan*, “Except it be owing to death or other sure hindrance.”

P. 29, [l. 960.](#) *be hold*, be held. MS. *behold*. Stevenson suggested the alteration, which is certainly correct.

[961.](#) *withthy*, on the condition that.

[965.](#) *promyt*, promise; *als fast as*, as soon as.

[973.](#) *ferd*, fourth.

[982.](#) “Where we shall decide the end of this war.”

P. 30, [l. 997.](#) *cag*, cage, prison.

[999.](#) *amen*, pleasant.

[1000.](#) *vodis*, woods.

[1004.](#) *lust*, pleasure (Ch.). But the line is obscure; unless we read “*diuersitee*.”

[1009.](#) “His spirit started (owing to the) love (which) anon hath caught him,” etc.

[1012.](#) *at*, that.

[1014.](#) “(As to) whom they know not at all.”

[1019.](#) *sen at*, since that.

[1022.](#) *the dewod*, devoid thee.

[1024.](#) *and*, if.

[1026.](#) *be ony mayne*, by any mean.

P. 31, [l. 1027.](#) *y red*, I advise.

[1035.](#) *To warnnyng*, to warn.

[1040.](#) *our the furdis*, over the fords.

[1044.](#) *oyer*. So in MS.; the *y* representing the old *th* (*þ*); other.

[1046.](#) *hufyng*, halting.

[1050.](#) *worschip*, honour. “It were more expedient to maintain your honour.”

[1058.](#) *wonk*, winked.

[1062.](#) *vare*, aware.

P. 32, [l. 1064](#). The meaning of “ferst-conquest” is “first-conquered” (*conquest* being Old Fr. for conquered). It is explained in [l. 1547](#) as having been a title given to the king whom Galiot first subdued.

[1067](#). *ferss*, fierce.

[1070](#). *suppos*, although.

[1073](#). *he*; viz. the shrew.

[1077](#). The MS. has “fched.”

[1080](#). *ymen*, I mean.

[1095](#). *tais*, takes.

P. 33, [l. 1109](#). *Galyot* put for *Galiotes*, the genitive case-ending being often omitted, after a proper name especially.

[1110](#). *prewit*, proved, tried.

[1129](#). *traist*, trust.

[1131](#). *that euery thing hath cure*, that (of) everything hath care.

P. 34, [l. 1135](#). “Aye from the time that the sun began to light the world’s face, until he was gone.”

[1137](#). *o forss*, perforce.

[1141](#). *taiis*, takes.

[1142](#). *hecht*, promised.

[1151](#). *failzeis*, fail.

[1154](#). *fet*, fetched.

[1156](#). *stant*, standeth.

[1162](#). *resput*, respite.

[1166](#). *very knyghtis passing*, weary knights go.

P. 35, [l. 1170](#). *till spere*, to inquire.

[1177](#). *ne wor his worschip*, had it not been for his valour.

[1187](#). *qwheyar*, whether.

[1191-4](#). “And fond,” etc. These four lines are now for the first time printed.

They were omitted by Stevenson, evidently by accident.

[1196](#). *Per dee*. Fr. *par Dieu*: an oath common in old ballads, generally in the form *pardy*.

[1197](#). *vsyt*, used.

[1198](#). “I advise that we go unto his arms” (armour).

[1203](#). *haill*, whole.

- P. 36, [l. 1207](#). *abwsyt*, abused, i.e. made an ill use of.
[1208](#). *vsyt*, used.
[1209](#). *suppos the best that lewis*, even though (it were) the best that lives.
[1217](#). *on slep*, asleep. The prefix *a-* in English is due to the Saxon *on*.
[1221](#). *al to-hurt*, etc. See note in Glossary on the word *To-kerwith*.
[1225](#). *sauch*, saw; *rewit*, rued, pitied.
[1233](#). *one syd a lyt*, a little on one side.
[1236](#). *our mekill*, over much.
- P. 37, [l. 1240](#). *yarof*, thereof.
[1241](#). *ruput*, repute, think.
[1242](#). *ablare*, abler, readier.
[1253](#). Insert a comma after *thret*, and destroy that after *lowe*. The meaning perhaps is, “But what if he be appealed to and threatened, and (meanwhile) his heart be elsewhere set to love.” Observe that *and* is often the third or fourth word in the sentence it should begin. See [l. 2833](#).
[1258](#). *3he tyne yowr low*, you lose your love.
[1260](#). *conclisit*, ended.
[1265](#). *mokil*, much.
[1268](#). *of new*, anew, again.
[1273](#). *pan*, pain.

NOTES TO BOOK II.

- P. 38, [l. 1279](#). *thocht*, anxiety.
[1284](#). *apperans*, i.e. vision, as in [l. 364](#).
[1295](#). *aqwynt*, acquainted; Burns uses *acquent*.
[1297](#). *com*, coming.
- P. 39, [l. 1316](#). “So far out of the way you go in your course.” Compare [l. 1797](#).
[1317](#). “Thy ship, that goeth upon the stormy surge, nigh of thy revels (i.e. because of thy revels) in the gulf it falls, where it is almost drowned in the peril.”
[1321](#). “In the wretched dance of wickedness.” See the curious uses of the word “daunce” in Chaucer.

[1323.](#) *the son*, thee soon.

[1330.](#) *powert*, poverty; *as the-selwyne wat*, as thyself knows.

[1334.](#) *in to spousag*, in wedlock.

P. 40, [l. 1343](#). The word *diuerss* is required to complete the line; cf. [l. 731](#).

[1352.](#) *suppriss*, oppression.

[1354.](#) *wedwis*, widows.

[1367.](#) *that ilke*, that same.

[1369.](#) *sufferith*, makest to suffer.

P. 41, [l. 1379](#). Eccles. iv. 9, 10.

[1387.](#) *yow mone*, thou must.

[1392.](#) *her-eftir leif*, hereafter live.

[1401.](#) A comma is scarcely needed after “*sapiens*.” It means “The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom.” Prov. ix. 10.

P. 42, [l. 1409](#). *to ryng wnder his pess*, to reign under His peace, by His permission. Roquefort gives *pais*, licence, permission.

[1420.](#) *arour*, error.

[1427.](#) *leful*, lawful.

P. 43, [l. 1447](#). Ban, king of Albanak, was Lancelot’s father. See [l. 202](#), [1450](#).

[1474.](#) The MS. has “*affit*.”

P. 44, [l. 1491](#). *tak the bak apone themself*, turn their backs.

[1500.](#) *yewyne*, given.

[1504.](#) *till*, to; redundant.

[1506.](#) *stand aw*, stand in awe. So also in [l. 2684](#). The same expression occurs in *The Bruce*, iii. 62, ed. Pinkerton, p. 42, ed. Jamieson; and also in *Havelok*, l. 277, where the word *in*, supplied from conjecture, should be struck out.

P. 45, [l. 1537](#). *throw his peple*, by his people.

[1541](#). *Thus falith not*, etc., “Except wise conduct falleth to a king.”

[1546](#). It may be right to retain the spelling of the MS.—“kinghe;” for, though strange and unusual, it occurs again in [l. 2527](#).

P. 46, [l. 1556](#). *wende*, weened.

[1560](#). *in to his contrare*, against him.

[1568](#). *trewis*, truce.

[1575](#). *his powar*, his chief army.

[1576](#). *by the yhere*, by the ear, privately.

[1579](#). *cold*, called; as in [l. 753](#).

P. 47, [l. 1597](#). *home fair*, go home.

[1608](#). *And*; redundant in modern English. For many of the precepts given by Amytans the author must have been indebted to Gower, or, at any rate, to the author of the *Secreta Secretorum*. See Gower; Conf. Amantis; ed. Pauli, lib. vii; vol. 3, pp. 152-159. And cf. Tyrwhitt’s note to the Canterbury Tales, l. 16915; and Warton’s Hist. Eng. Poetry.

P. 48, [l. 1628](#). *lest*, least; *low*, law. It requires care to distinguish the two meanings of *low*, viz. *love* and *law*.

[1633](#). *Iug*, judge.

P. 49, [l. 1660](#). *sar*, sorely.

[1666](#). A line omitted. The inserted line is purely conjectural.

P. 50, [l. 1704](#). *pupelle*, people.

[1708](#). *Inwyus*, envious.

[1716](#). *longith*, belongeth.

[1717](#). *the lykith*, it likes thee, thou art pleased.

P. 51, [l. 1724](#). *betak til hyme*, confer upon him.

[1730](#). *essy*, easy.

[1736](#). *for the nonis*, for the occasion. See White’s Ormulum.

[1739](#). *vn to the vorthi pur yow if*, unto the worthy poor thou give.

[1742](#). *set nocht of gret substans*, though not of great value.

[1754](#). *alowit*, approved of.

P. 52, [l. 1761](#). *tynith*, loseth.

[1763](#). *atonis*, at once.

[1771](#). *resawe*, receive.

[1773](#). *with two*, also.

P. 53, [l. 1791](#). *well less*, *al-out*, much less, altogether. The punctuation hereabouts in Stevenson's edition is very wild.

[1795](#). *wys*, vice; *the wrechitness*, thy miserliness.

[1797](#). *pass the courss*, go thy way.

[1808](#). *vrech*, wretch; but here used instead of *miser*.

[1812](#). *viss*, vice.

[1814](#). *ben y-knawith*, are known (to be) (?).

[1815](#). *dant*, daunt.

[1822](#). *the ton*, the one.

P. 54, [l. 1832](#). *beis var*, beware.

[1834](#). *colde*, cool.

[1852](#). *onys*, once.

[1855](#). *whar-throw*, through which, whereby.

P. 55, [l. 1864](#), *awn*, own. The metre requires the more usual form *awin*.

[1879](#). *dispolzeith*, despoileth.

[1881](#). *For-quhi*, wherefore. In this line the MS. has "scrikth."

P. 56, [l. 1899](#). *most nedis*, must needs. *Ye* = *the*; i.e. The one, He.

[1909](#). *Mot*, might.

[1917](#). *in* should be *into*, as elsewhere.

P. 57, [l. 1940](#). *havith*, hath.

[1950](#). *hot*, hight, is called.

P. 58, [l. 1966](#). *wnepwnist*, unpunished.

[1990](#). *omend*, amend; *spill*, destroy.

P. 59, [l. 2011](#). *ayre*, are.

[2012](#). *duclar*, declare; so also *dulay* for delay.

[2017](#). *the god werray*, the Very God.

P. 60, [l. 2036](#). *For-quhi*, wherefore.

[2040](#). *mad*, made.

[2041.](#) *clergy*, science.

[2062.](#) *be the mycht dewyne*, by the might divine.

P. 61, [l. 2069.](#) *far*, fare.

[2079.](#) *helyth frome the ground*, heals from the bottom; i.e. effectually.

[2100.](#) *not sessith*, who ceaseth not.

P. 62, [l. 2107.](#) *Ne war*, were it not for; *hartly*, hearty; it occurs again four lines below.

[2135.](#) *yneuch*, enough. He means he will ask but one question more.

P. 63, [l. 2148.](#) *To passing home*, to go home.

[2162.](#) *the xxiiij day*. The first *i* in the MS. is like a “v” smudged over; we should read “xxiiij,” as in [l. 2155](#). The contraction is to be read *four and twentieth*, not *twenty-fourth*; so also in [l. 610](#).

P. 64, [l. 2190.](#) *hal dure*, hall door.

[2192.](#) *o iorne most for to comend*, a journey most to be commended.

[2194.](#) *lowith*, love.

P. 65, [l. 2212.](#) *the fewar eschef thay*, the less they achieve.

[2229.](#) “For no adventure will prove so great, that ye shall not achieve it.”

[2241.](#) *whill*, until.

P. 66, [l. 2247.](#) *galot*; so in MS.

[2265.](#) *grant mercy*, great thanks; Fr. *grand merci*.

[2267.](#) *quhy*, because.

P. 67, [l. 2279.](#) *thithingis*, tidings; probably an error of the scribe for *tithingis*. Stevenson has *chichingis*!

[2284.](#) *al-out*, altogether.

[2304.](#) *oft syss*, oft-times. See Glossary (Syss).

[2306.](#) *dante*, dainty.

[2310.](#) *tithandis*, tidings; compare [l. 2279](#).

P. 68, [l. 2323.](#) *aw*, owe.

[2328.](#) *fantessy*, fancy, notion.

[2334.](#) *for no why*, for no reason.

[2337.](#) *mon I fair*, must I go.

[2338.](#) *our son It waire*, over soon it were.

[2342.](#) *For-quhy*, because.

P. 69, [l. 2352.](#) *nor* has the force of *but*.

[2366.](#) *be ony men*, by any means.

[2368.](#) *on of tho*, one of them.

[2375.](#) *chen of low*, chain of love.

[2376.](#) *and if 3he may deren*, an if you may declare.

P. 70, [l. 2409.](#) *hartly raquer*, heartily require.

[2416.](#) *gar ordan*, cause to be provided.

P. 71, [l. 2428.](#) *prewaly disspone*, privily dispose.

[2436.](#) *ellis-quhat*; I suppose this means, "he was on fire *elsewhere*."

[2448.](#) *hamlynes*, homeliness.

[2452.](#) *fest throw al the 3her eliche*, feast through all the year alike.

P. 72, [l. 2469.](#) *commend*, commended.

[2470.](#) *he drywith*, he driveth, pursueth. The reading is not *drawith*, as in Stevenson.

NOTES TO BOOK III.

P. 73, [l. 2471.](#) This line is too long, and the sense imperfect; but there is no doubt about the reading of the MS.

[2474.](#) *Awodith*, expels.

[2475.](#) *doune valis*, falls down; for it is evident that *valis* is an error for *falís*, the mistake having arisen from confusion with the succeeding line.

[2480.](#) *cled*, clad.

[2487.](#) *bygown*, begun. In the next line Stevenson has *sown*; but the true reading is *Rown*, run; as in [l. 2820](#).

[2492.](#) *barnag*, baronage, nobility.

P. 74, [l. 2522.](#) *but dulay*, without delay; *the*, they.

[2524.](#) *thar com*, their coming.

[2530.](#) *in the dogre*, in its (due) degree.

P. 75, [l. 2545.](#) *Or that*, ere that.

[2552.](#) *he and hate*, high and hot.

[2558](#). *the can*, they began.

P. 76, [l. 2574](#). *hyme mak*, prepare himself; or perhaps simply, make (for the field), go.

[2582](#). *helmys last*; *last* clearly means *laced*; see [l. 2250](#).

[2594](#). *ʒhit*, although.

[2599](#). *dout*, fear.

[2600](#). *is assemblit*, made an attack. The peculiar use of *assemble* must always be borne in mind.

[2601](#). *erd*, earth.

P. 77, [l. 2612](#). *found till gwyans*, go to Gwyans.

[2614](#). *til esquyris thei sewyt*, after Esquyris they followed.

[2619](#). *one to the melle socht*, made their way to the *mêlée*.

[2627](#). *don bore*, borne down.

[2630](#). Fifty thousand. It would appear that Galiot had 40,000, of whom 10,000 were held *in reserve*; so that in [l. 2632](#) only 30,000 are mentioned. See [l. 2569](#), [2647](#).

P. 78, [l. 2646](#). *ten*, sorrow, vexation.

[2656](#). *resauf*, receive.

[2663](#). *at thar come*, at their coming; *led*, put down.

[2670](#). *biding one the bent*, abide on the grassy plain.

P. 79, [l. 2679](#). “That, despite their efforts, they must needs retire.”

[2684](#). *stud aw*, stood in awe; see note to [l. 1506](#).

[2693](#), 4. These lines do not rime. But we should certainly read *felde*, *erde* having slipped in from confusion with [l. 2691](#). The knight of Galloway goes *to the field*, i.e. joins battle.

P. 80, [l. 2712](#). *On ayar half*, on either side. The MS. omits *to*.

[2713](#). *of*, off.

[2714](#). *noiss*, nose.

[2731](#). *Bot nocht forthi*, But not on that account.

P. 81, [l. 2754](#). *harmys*, loss.

[2761](#). *aucht to ses*, ought to cease.

[2765](#). *at*, that.

[2768](#). *my lef*, my leave, permission.

[2770.](#) *in to cage*, in prison.

P. 82, [l. 2802.](#) *commandit*, commended.

P. 83, [l. 2819.](#) *one athir half*, on either side.

[2820.](#) *rown*, run.

[2821.](#) *howyns*; an ungrammatical form; perhaps *howyng* is meant.

[2827.](#) *one hycht*, on height; i.e. aloud.

[2829.](#) *sterith*, stirreth.

[2833.](#) “The lady of Melyhalt made (her way) to him, and immediately caused his couch to be placed before a window.” Mr Stevenson reads,

“Of Melyhalt the lady to hyme maid

Incontinent his couche, and gart he ¹ had,” etc.

i.e. “The lady immediately made his bed for him,” etc.

[2841.](#) *wencust*, vanquished. After this word we should perhaps insert “at,” as in [l. 3336](#).

P. 84, [ll. 2877-2880](#). These lines were printed by me for the first time, four lines having been here again omitted by Mr Stevenson.

[2880.](#) *but weyne*, without doubt.

[2884.](#) *to led and stere*, to lead and direct.

P. 85, [l. 2893.](#) *Endlong*, along.

[2894.](#) *weryne*, were.

[2913.](#) *let*, hinder.

P. 86, [l. 2925.](#) *dulay*, delay; as in several other places.

[2938.](#) *fek*, effect.

[2944.](#) *zude*, went.

[2947.](#) *fair*, welfare.

P. 87, [l. 2964.](#) *Whill*, until.

[2970.](#) *ho*, stop, pause.

[2971.](#) *veryng In affray*, were in terror.

[2972.](#) *rovm*, room.

[2978.](#) *socht*, made his way.

[2984.](#) *disponit*, intends; but we must insert “not,” to complete the sense and the metre.

P. 88, [l. 2998](#). *eschevit* (used passively), is achieved.

[3003](#). *o knyght*, a single knight.

[3005](#). *tais*, takes.

[3006](#). *fays*, foes.

[3013](#). *onys or the nyght*, once ere the night.

[3015](#). *that zhe have gilt to mend*, to amend that in which ye have trespassed.

P. 89, [l. 3052](#). *Do at I may*, Do that which I can.

P. 90, [l. 3065](#). This line is printed by Mr Stevenson,

“Curag can [] encresing in ²his hart”;

but it is not clear that a word is wanting, for the metre is as complete as in many other lines; whilst, as regards the sense, “the knyght” is probably a nominative without a verb, and [l. 3065](#) means, “Courage did increase in his heart.” Or the reader may, if he pleases, insert “fele.” Compare [l. 3058](#).

[3066](#). *lap*, leaped.

[3079](#). Observe the omission of the word “neither” in this line.

[3080](#). *persit*, pierced.

[3086](#). *onan*, anon. A.S. *on-án*.

P. 91, [l. 3093](#). *In samyne will*, with like intent.

[3100](#). *bet axampil*, better example.

[3104](#). *bot*, unless; *me fall*, befall me.

[3108](#). *one vthir*, another.

[3120](#). *send*, sent.

[3121](#). *lewit one*, left one.

[3122](#). *but mercy*, without mercy.

P. 92, [l. 3134](#). *deliuer besynes*, clever readiness.

[3136](#). *aray*, livery.

[3140](#). *Ee*, eye.

[3146](#). *the morow new*, the early morning.

[3160](#). *deith*, dead.

[3162](#). *Suppos*, although.

P. 93, [l. 3178](#). *Nor*; we now use *but*.

[3184](#). *ward*; see Glossary. *tho*, then.

- P. 94, [l. 3200](#). *relewit*, relieved.
[3201](#). *diuerss placis sere*; as *sere* = *diuerss*, one of these words is redundant.
So in [l. 3266](#).
[3207](#). *ewil awysit*, ill advised.
[3217](#). “And if it so happen, that they be discomfited.”
- P. 95, [l. 3240](#). *leuch*, laughed; *sarues*, service.
[3246](#). *al haill*, all whole.
[3248](#). *x thousand mo*, ten thousand, and more.
[3259](#). *abaid*, delay.
[3263](#). *aucht*, eight.
[3265](#). *petws for til her*, piteous to hear.
- P. 96, [l. 3297](#). *dreuch*, drew.
[3299](#). *fellit*, fallen.
[3304](#). *levyng*, leave.
- P. 97, [l. 3307](#). *sest*, ceased.
[3321](#). *askit at*, asked of.
[3331](#). *Wencussith*, vanquisheth.
[3340](#). *in to one*, continually; which is sometimes the sense of A.S. *on-án*.
- P. 98, [l. 3353](#). *to fillyng*, to fulfil.
[3357](#). *soght*, came on; see Glossary.
[3359](#). *Ne war*, etc., “Had it not been that they were, individually, the better men.”
[3364](#). *ralef*, relieve.
[3368](#). *fellith*, feeleth.
- P. 99, [l. 3384](#). *virslýng*, wrestling, *i.e.* entangled with; a strong expression!
[3385](#). *assalzeing*, assail.
[3390](#). *rowmyth*, roometh, emptieth.
[3403](#). *departit*, parted.
[3404](#). *dout*, fear.
- P. 100, [l. 3412](#). *left*, failed.
[3423](#). *The lord*, *i.e.* Galiot, as I suppose; Mr Stevenson has, “The Lord.”
[3430](#). *stere*, to stir, move, come.

P. 101, [l. 3450](#). *pretendit*, endeavour.

[3457](#). *occupye*, employ.

[3461](#). *For one hour*, etc., “On account of suffering distress for one hour.”

[3470](#). *the well less*, much less; see [l. 1791](#).

[3471](#). *berd*, beard.

[3473](#). *o woyss*, one voice.

[3475](#). *eschef frome yhow*, not, *win* from you; but, *withdraw* himself from you.

See Glossary.

P. 102, [l. 3481](#). *wend thai var no mo*, thought they were no more.

[3487](#). *And sich enconter*, and such encounter. These three words are written at the bottom of the page as a catchword. The rest of the MS. is wanting.

¹ But the MS. has “be;” also “melyhat” instead of “Melyhalt.”

² MS. has “to.”

GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

[As many of the words occurring in “Lancelot” are well explained either in Jamieson’s Scottish Dictionary or in Roquefort’s “Glossaire de la langue Romane,” I have frequently referred to these works by means of the letters J. and R. Other abbreviations, as O.N. for Old Norse; Goth. for Mæso-Gothic; Su.-G. for Suio-Gothic, etc., will be readily understood. Ch. has also been used as an abbreviation for Chaucer. The various French, Danish, German, and other words referred to in the Glossary are merely added by way of illustration, to indicate in what direction a word may be most easily traced up. To ensure accuracy as far as possible, I have verified every foreign word by the aid of dictionaries, referring for Gothic words to my own Glossary, edited for the Philological Society; for Suio-Gothic words, to Ihre’s Glossarium; for Icelandic words, to Egilsson; and for Old French words, to Roquefort and Burguy. Whatever errors occur below may thus, I hope, be readily traced.]

[A](#) [B](#) [C](#) [D](#) [E](#) [F](#) [G](#) [H](#) [I](#) [K](#) [L](#) [M](#) [N](#)
[O](#) [P](#) [Q](#) [R](#) [S](#) [T](#) [U](#) [V](#) [W](#) [Y](#) [3](#)

Abaid,
Abyde,

delay, tarrying, [1882](#), [2147](#), [3069](#), [3308](#).

A.S. *abídan*, J.

Abasit,
Abasyt,
Abaysit,

abashed, humbled, dispirited, cast down, [378](#), [1452](#), [2664](#).

Abasit of, dispirited by, [3301](#).

R. *abaiser*.

Abasit of (used passively), were dispirited by, [2243](#).

Abraid, awoke, [1231](#);

(Ch.) A.S. *on-bredan*.

Abwsyt (abused), made an ill use of, [1207](#).

Access, a fever; or better, a fit of the ague; Lat. *accessus febris*, (Wright's Glossary), [31](#).

Accorde, to agree with, [1526](#).

Fr. *s'accorder*.

Accordith, is suitable for, becomes, [1679](#), [1951](#);

agree therewith, [605](#);

is useful for, is fit for, [1204](#).

According for, suitable for, [1512](#).

R. *accordant*.

Adred, terrified, [378](#), [2664](#).

A.S. *on-drádan*, to dread.

Affek, effect, [382](#).

Cf. *Fek*.

Afferd, afraid, [3472](#).

A.S. *afered*, *aféran*.

Affere, warlike preparation, [985](#);
aspect, bearing, [3043](#), [3334](#), [3394](#).

See J., who makes it of Teutonic origin; but it may be no more than the O.Fr.
afeire, *affaire* = state, condition; as explained by Burguy.

Afferith, belongs to, suits, [1550](#).

Afferis, is suitable, [1690](#), [1961](#).

R. *aferrer*.

Affrait, terrified, from the verb *Affray* (Ch.), [2462](#), [3469](#).

R. *effraer*.

Affray, terror, fright, [636](#), [3454](#).

Fr. *effroi*.

Affy in till, trust to, rely upon, [499](#), [1394](#).

R. *affier*.

Afyre, on fire, [30](#), [251](#);
hence, used allegorically, in love, [2436](#).

Agrewit,

Aggrewit,

aggrieved, vexed, [1308](#), [1538](#);
angry, enraged, [2618](#).

R. *agrever*.

Ago, gone, [159](#).

A.S. *of-gán*.

Aire, are, [1732](#).

Algait, Algat, always, [1996](#), [1792](#).

Gothic *gatwô*, a street, way.

Al magre thine, in spite of thee, [115](#).

An expression compounded of A.S. *al*, wholly; *maugre* (Fr. *mal grè*), ill-will,
and *thine* (A.S. *thín*, the gen. case of *thú*, thou).

Al-out, altogether, [1676](#), [1791](#), etc.

Alowit, approved, [1754](#).

Fr. *allouer*.

Als, (1) as; (2) also.

Amen,

Ameyne,

pleasant, [64](#), [999](#).

Lat. *amænus*.

Anarmyt, fully armed, [545](#), [620](#), [2219](#), [2771](#).

See *Enarmyt*.

And, if, [1024](#), [1591](#);

and if (= an if), if, [2376](#).

Anerly, only, [1476](#), [1696](#).

A.S. *æn-líc*.

Anoit,

Anoyt,

annoyed, vexed, [351](#), [2244](#).

Anoyt, annoyeth, [1407](#).

Anterous, (for Aunterous, the shortened form of Adventurous), adventurous, [2618](#).

Fr. *aventure*.

Aparalit, apparelled, [338](#).

Aperans, an appearance, a vision, [364](#).

So also Apperans, [1284](#).

Apone, upon, [765](#), etc.

Appetit, desire, [2722](#).

Ch. has *appetite* as a verb, to desire.

Aqwynt, acquainted, [1295](#).

Burns uses *acquent*.

Aras, to pluck out, [240](#).

Fr. *arracher*.

Araid, disordered, afflicted, [3270](#).

See *Araye* in Halliwell. The examples there given shew that to *araye* sometimes actually signifies to *disorder*.

Arest, stop, delay, [678](#), [3072](#), [3308](#).

Fr. *arrêt*.

Arly, early, [4](#), [384](#), [975](#).

A.S. *árlíce*.

Artillery, implements of warfare, [2538](#).

See R. *artillerie*. Compare 1 Samuel, xx. 40.

Assay, (1) assault, trial, [11](#), [35](#), [112](#), [712](#);

attack, [537](#), [2662](#).

As a verb, to assault, attack, assail, [570](#), [1044](#).

Fr. *assaillir*.

(2) to essay, attempt, [2936](#);

to test, [478](#), [982](#).

Fr. *essaier*.

Assaid,

Assayt,

assaulted, [1224](#), [2641](#).

Assall, assault, attack, [842](#).

We should perhaps read “assaill,” as in [l. 855](#).

Assalzeing, assail (3 pers. plural), [3385](#).

Assemblay, an assembling of knights for a combat, a tournament, [267](#).

Assemble, a hostile meeting, combat, battle, [978](#), [3336](#).

See J.

Assemblyng, encountering, [2588](#).

Assemblyng on, attacking, [2956](#).

Assey, to test, [478](#).

See Assay.

Astart, to start away from; hence to escape from, avoid, [228](#), [3296](#).

Ch. has *asterte*.

At, that, [1019](#), etc.

Compare Dan. *at*; O.N. *at*.

Atour, at over, i.e. across, [841](#), [849](#), [873](#);

in excess, in addition, besides, [1775](#).

Ather, either, [2629](#), [2819](#), [3264](#).

A.S. *ægther*.

Atte, at the, [627](#), [1055](#).

Aucht, eight, [3263](#).

Compare Ger. *acht*.

Auentur, adventure, [601](#).

Auer, ever, [273](#), etc.

Auerding to, belonging to (?), [345](#).

The sense seems to point to the A.S. *and-weardian*, to be present, Goth. *and-wairths*, present.

Aventur, Auentoure, adventure, [80](#), [222](#).

Aw, owe, deserve; the present tense of the verb of which *ought* is the past tense; [3447](#).

A.S. *áh, áhte*.

Awalk, awake, [1049](#).

Goth. *wakan*. The form *awalk* occurs in Dunbar,

“*Awalk, luvaris, out of your slomeriſ.*”
(The Thistle and the Rose.)

Awant, boast, [2136](#).

As a verb, [1588](#);

and as a reflexive verb, [2196](#), [2386](#).

Fr. *se vanter*. Ch. has *avante*.

Awin, own, [89](#).

A.S. *ágen*.

Awodith, maketh to depart, [2474](#).

See *Avoid* in Nares' Glossary, edited by Halliwell and Wright.

Awow,

Awoue,

vow, [234](#), [242](#), [246](#).

Ch. has *avowe*.

Awys, consideration, advisement, [558](#).

Awyß the, advise thee, consider, [1913](#).

Awyß,
Awyfing,

to consider, [424](#), [429](#).

Fr. *s'aviser*.

Awysment, advisement, consideration, [360](#), [680](#).

Ay, ever, continually, [1135](#), [1486](#).

A.S. *á*.

Ayar (*written instead of* Athar), either, [2712](#).

Ayre, are, [2011](#).

Ayanis, [744](#),

Azanis, [1164](#), [2283](#),

against.

A.S. *ongean*.

Azane, Azeine, again, [3253](#), [380](#).

[Bachleris](#), bachelors; a name given to novices in arms or arts, [1689](#).

See *bachelor* in R.

Banaris, banners, [770](#).

Bartes, [2897](#)

Bartiis, [3041](#).

See [Bertes](#).

Barnag, baronage, nobility, [2492](#).

See *barniez* in R.

Batell, a battalion, division of an army, [784](#), [808](#), etc.

Be, by.

A.S. *be*.

Behest, promise, [2766](#).

A.S. *behæs*.

Behufis, behoves, [579](#).

A.S. *behófan*, often used impersonally.

Behuß,

Behwß,

it behoves, it is necessary (to do), [944](#), [2342](#);

apparently contracted from *behufis*.

Beleif, *in phr.* ore belief = beyond belief, [112](#).

Bent, a grassy plain (properly a coarse grass; in German, *binse*), [2670](#). J.

Bertes, a parapet, a tower, [1007](#), [1118](#), [2815](#).

R. *bretesche*, from Low Latin *brestachia*.

Betak til, to confer upon, [1724](#).

A.S. *be-tácan*, in the sense, to assign.

Betakyne, betoken, [2014](#).

A.S. *be-tácan*, in the sense, to shew.

Bewis, boughs, [338](#).

A.S. *boh*.

Billis, letters, [142](#).

Fr. *billet*.

Blindis, blindness (?), [1903](#).

Borde, to meet in a hostile manner, encounter, [809](#).

We find in R. *border*, to joust, fight with lances.

Compare Fr. *aborder*, and Spenser's use of *bord*. See *horde* in Burguy.

Bot, (1) but; (2) without. In general, *without* is expressed by *but*, and the conjunction by *bot*; but this distinction is occasionally violated.

Bown, ready, prepared, [1036](#).

O.N. *búinn*, past part. of *búa*, to prepare. Su.-G. *boa*, to prepare. J.

Bretis, fortifications, forts, [874](#);

“properly wooden towers or castles: *Bretachia*, castella lignea, quibus castra et oppida muniebantur, Gallis *Bretesque*. Du Cange.” Jamieson. See [Bertes](#).

Bukis, books, [434](#), [1862](#).

Burdis, boards, i.e. tables, [2198](#).

A.S. *bórd*, which means—1. a plank; 2. a table, etc.

Bur, bore, [733](#), [778](#).

But, without; common in the phrase *but were*, without doubt.

But if, unless, except, [958](#).

Byhecht,

Byhicht,

promised, [1485](#), [2791](#).

A.S. *be-hætan*.

Byknow, notorious for, known to be guilty of, [1627](#).

Compare “I *know* nothing *by* myself” (1 Cor. iv. 4). Compare also Dan. *bekiende*, to make known.

By, near at hand, [1535](#), [2916](#).

[Cag](#),

Cage,

cage, prison, [997](#), [2770](#).

Can, an auxiliary verb, used nearly as we now use *did*.

Careldis, plural of Careld, a merry-making, revel (?), [1318](#).

“*Caraude*, réjouissance;” and “*Caroler*, danser, se divertir, mener une vie joyeuse.” Roquefort.

Catifis, wretches, [2102](#).

R. *caitif*, *captif*. Compare Ital. *cattivo*.

Chalmer, chamber, [2281](#), [2308](#), [2427](#), [2808](#). J.

Chare,

Cher,

chariot, [4](#), [735](#).

R. *cher*.

Charge, load, [693](#).

Fr. *charge*; see *discharge* in the line following ([694](#)), meaning to shake off a load.

Chargit, gave attention to, [710](#), [2454](#).

Fr. *se charger de*.

Chen, chain, [2375](#).

Cher, car, chariot, [735](#). See *Chare*.

Chere, cheer, demeanour, [83](#), [341](#), [695](#);
sad demeanour, outward grief, [2718](#).

Fr. *chère*; compare Ital. *ciera*, the face, look.

“*Wepinge was hyr mosté chere.*”

(*Le Morte Arthur*, l. 726.)

Cheß, choose, [1611](#), [1636](#), [2368](#).

A.S. *ceósan*; Ger. *kiesen*; Dutch *kiezen*.

Clariouns, clarions, [771](#), [789](#).

Clepe, to call, [90](#), [99](#).

A.S. *clepan*.

Clepit, callest, [93](#);

called, [781](#).

Clepith, is called, [1919](#).

Clergy, science, knowledge, [504](#), [511](#), [2041](#).

R. *clergie*.

Closine, closed, concluded, [316](#).

Closith, enclosed, shut up, [427](#).

Cold, called, [753](#), [1579](#).

Commandit, commended, [2802](#).

Comprochit, approached, [2472](#), [2509](#).

Conpilour, compiler, poet, [319](#).

Conquest, conquered, [574](#);

Fyrst-conquest, first conquered, [1545](#), etc.

Conseruyt, preserved, [332](#).

Conten (used as a reflective verb), to demean oneself valorously, to maintain one's ground, [823](#), [1107](#), [1130](#).

See R. “*contenement*, contenance, conduite, maintien, posture.”

Contentit hym, behaved himself, [3219](#);

Contentit them, [2634](#).

Contentyt, endured, [3190](#).

Contretioun, contrition, [1415](#), [1426](#).

Contynans, demeanour, [1693](#), [1747](#).

Counter, encounter, attack, charge, [3239](#).

Couth, could, [793](#).

A.S. *cunnan*; past tense, *ic cúðe*.

Cowardy, cowardice, [1023](#), [3287](#).

Cownterit, encountered, [2609](#), [2621](#). J.

Crownel, coronal, corolla of a flower, [59](#). J.

Cummyne,

Comyne,

came, [807](#), [907](#).

Cumyne, [650](#), [1136](#),

Cumyng, [447](#),

Cummyng, [2498](#),

come (past part.).

Cunyng, knowledge, [1455](#).

Cusynace, [1270](#),

Cusynece, [2802](#),

Cusynes, [2287](#),

Cwsynes, [1185](#),

kinswoman.

Cwre, care, [98](#), [266](#), [643](#).

Lat. *cura*. (N.B. Though *Cwre* = *cura*, yet *cura* should be distinguished from A.S. *cearu*.)

[Danger](#), power to punish; “the power of a feudal lord over his vassals,” (Wright), [444](#).

Also, power to injure, [3006](#).

See R. *dangier*.

Dans, (dance), in the phrase “wrechit dans,” evil mode of life, [1321](#).

See Chaucer’s use of *daunce*; and compare—

“I sai 3ow lely how thai lye
Dongen doun alle in a *daunce*.”

Lawrence Minot; quoted in *Specimens of Early English*, by R. Morris;
p. [194](#).

Dede, [90](#),

Ded, [3304](#),

death.

Dan. *död*. A.S. *deáð*. O.N. *dauði*.

Deden, deign, [949](#). J.

Dedenyt, deigned, [240](#).

Deid, died, [215](#).

Deith, dead (past part.), [3160](#).

Delitable, delightful, [1738](#).

R. *delitable*.

Deliuer, nimble, clever, [3134](#).

Deliuerly, (cleverly), nimbly, lightly, [3089](#), [3131](#).

R. *delivre*.

Demande, demur, [191](#), [397](#), [3052](#), [3354](#).

See R. “*demander*, contremander, changer, revoquer l’ordre donné.”

Depart, to part, [3421](#).

R. *departir*.

Departit, parted, [3403](#).

Depaynt, painted, [46](#), [1703](#).

Fr. *dépeint*. Ch. *depeint*.

Depend me, waste or consume (my powers), [214](#); possibly miswritten for *despend*.

Cf. *Dispendit*.

Depend to, to concern, appertain to, [466](#).

Deren, to speak out, tell, [2376](#).

R. *derainier*.

Dereyne, a plea, [2313](#);

“haith o dereyne ydoo,” hath appealed to trial by combat.

R. *derainier*.

Des, daïs, high table, [2762](#).

R. *deis*; Lat. *discus*.

Deuit, availed, [18](#). See note.

Devith,

Dewith,

deafen, [92](#), [94](#).

“Su.-G. *deofwa*; Icel. *deyfa*,” J.

Compare Dan. *döve*. Burns has *deave*.
Dewod the, devoid thyself, [1022](#).
Deuoydit was = departed, [1031](#).
Compare *Awodith*.
Dewyß, to tell, narrate, [373](#).
Discharg, to put aside one's liability, [163](#), [1665](#).
Diseß, lack of ease, misery, [707](#).
Disiont (Disioint?), disjointed, out of joint; hence uncertain, hazardous, [2907](#).
"Disjoint, A difficult situation." Halliwell.
Dispendit, spent, [1808](#).
R. *despendre*.
Dispens, expenditure, [1746](#).
Fr. *dépense*.
Dispolzeith, despoileth, [1879](#).
Dispone, to dispose, provide; or, as a reflective verb, to be disposed to do, to intend, [54](#), [446](#), [980](#), [1590](#), [2428](#), [2462](#).
Disponit, declines (?); but much more probably, intends; and we must read "disponit not," [2984](#).
Dout, fear, [2599](#), [3404](#), [3438](#);
(as a verb), to fear, [740](#), [1827](#).
Ch. *doute*. R. *doubtance*.
Drent, drowned, [1319](#).
A.S. *drencean*.
Dreß (as a reflective verb), to direct oneself, proceed, go, [1975](#), [2288](#), [2486](#).
Lat. *dirigere*.
Drywith, drives; "he drywith to the end," i.e. concludes, [2470](#).
Duclar, declare, [3022](#).
Dulay, delay, [681](#), [788](#), [2925](#).
[Effere](#), shew, pomp, [2360](#).
Compare *Affere*.

Efter, after, [217](#).

A.S. *efter*.

Eld, old age, [3225](#), [3242](#).

A.S. *ylðo*. Gothic *alds*.

Elyk, Eliche, alike, [182](#), [2452](#).

Eme, uncle, [2572](#).

A.S. *eám*.

Empit, emptied, empty, [180](#).

A.S. *æmtian*.

Empleß, to please, [2455](#). J.

Empriß, worth, honour, [129](#), [269](#), [3458](#);

cf. Romans of Partenay, l. 2013.

Anxiety, oppression, [393](#).

R. *emprindre*.

Enarmyt, fully armed, [285](#), [751](#), [2499](#). J.

Endit, indited, [138](#);

indite, [206](#);

inditing, poem (?), [334](#).

If the meaning were, “this ends,” the form “endis” would be required; besides which, the rime shews that the *i* is long; cf. [ll. 138](#), [206](#).

Endlong, along, [2893](#).

A.S. *andlang*; Ger. *entlang*.

Entent, intention, will, meaning, thoughts, [448](#), [1451](#), [1499](#), [2938](#).

R. *entente*. Used by Chaucer.

Entermet, to intermeddle with, to have do with, [2914](#).

R. *entremetre*.

Enweronyt, environed, [53](#).

Erde, earth, [1072](#), [1540](#), [2601](#).

Compare Ger. *erde*.

Erdly, earthly, [498](#).

Erith, earth, [128](#).

A.S. *eorð*.

Eschef (1. eschew), to shun, withdraw himself, [3475](#).

R. *eschever*;

(2. achieve), to accomplish, [2212](#), [2513](#).

R. *eschavir*.

Eschef deith, to die, [2732](#).

Escheuit, achieved, [258](#).

Eschevit, is achieved, [2998](#).

Eß, [174](#),

Eeß, [706](#),

ease.

Essen3eis (ensigns), warcries, [3349](#), J.

See also R. *enseigne*.

Euerilkon, every one, [1039](#), etc.

Exasy, extasy, [76](#). (Possibly miswritten.)

Exortith, beseecheth, [3026](#).

Extend, attain, [3281](#).

[Fail3eis](#), fail, (3 pers. plu. indicative), [1151](#).

Fairhed (fairhood), beauty, [577](#).

In A.S. *fægernes*, but in Dan. *förhed*.

Fall, to happen, befall, [493](#), [2139](#).

A.S. *feallan*; Dan. *falde*.

Fallyng, fallen, [1217](#), [1322](#).

Falowschip, used as we now use company, [1105](#), [2687](#), etc.

Fal3eing, failing, [1499](#).

Fal3et, Fal3heit, failed, [1460](#), [1469](#), [1498](#), [1503](#).

Farhed, beauty, [2440](#).

See [Fairhed](#).

Fayndit (feigned), dissembled, [2397](#).

Fays, foes, [3006](#).

A.S. *fáh*.

Fechtand, fighting, [2691](#), [3127](#), [3407](#).

Ger. *fechten*.

Fechteris, fighters, [686](#).

Feill, knowledge, skill, [2854](#). J.

A.S. *félian*.

Fek (effect), sum, amount, result, drift, [2938](#).

Fr. *effet*.

Fell, to feel, [820](#), [2131](#).

Fellith, feeleth, [3368](#).

Fell, many; als fell, as many, [768](#).

A.S. *féala*; Gothic *filu*.

Fell, horrible, [260](#).

A.S. *fell*, cruel, fierce.

Ferde, fourth, [815](#), [973](#), [2285](#).

Compare Dan. *fierde*.

Ferleit, wondered, [3117](#).

A.S. *fær-líc*, sudden, fearful. Burns has *ferlie*.

Fet, fetched, [433](#), [1154](#).

A.S. *feccan*, past tense, *ic feahte*.

Fongith, catcheth, seizeth, [1922](#).

A.S. *fangan*; Goth. *fahan*.

Forfare, to fare amiss, to perish, [1348](#).

A.S. *for-faran*.

Forlorn, lost, [3305](#).

A.S. *forloren*; cf. Goth. *fra-liusan*.

For-quhy; see *For-why*.

For-thi,

For-thy,

(there-fore), on that account, [332](#), [2261](#), [2731](#).

A.S. *forthý*; where *thý* (Gothic *thê*) is the instrumental case of *se*, that.

For-wrocht (for-wrought), over-worked, wearied out, [888](#).

A.S. *forwyr*can.

For-why, [798](#), [925](#), [2209](#),

For-quhy, [2171](#), [2342](#), [2290](#),

for the reason that, because that.

Found, to advance, go, [2612](#). J.

A.S. *fundian*, to try to find, go forward.

Franchis, generosity, [230](#).

R. *franchise*.

Fremmytneß, strangeness, alienation, [1508](#).

A.S. *fremdnes*.

Froit, enjoyment, [1644](#);

fruit, [2088](#), [2109](#).

R. *fruit*.

Frome, from the time that, [17](#), [1432](#).

Goth. *frums*, a beginning.

Fruschit, broken, dashed in pieces, [1201](#).

R. *frois*, broken; from the verb *froier*.

Fundyne, [497](#),

Fundyng, [465](#),

found (past part.).

Fyne, faithful, true, [519](#).

See R. “*fine*, *fidèle*,” and “*fine*, *foi*.”

Fyne, end, [1388](#), [2081](#).

Fr. *fin*.

[Ganith](#), is suitable for, [991](#).

Icel. *gegna*. J. Compare Dan. *gavne*.

Ganyth, it; it profits; *used impersonally*, [121](#).

R. *gaagner*.

Gare, to cause, [910](#), [2416](#).

Dan. *giöre*; Icel. *göra*.

Gart, caused, [267](#), [2777](#).

Gentilleß, [917](#), [1847](#).

See *Gentrice*.

Gentrice, [130](#), [2757](#),

Gentriß, [2790](#).

courtesy, nobleness.

R. *gentillesse*.

Gere, gear, equipment, armour, [2777](#).

A.S. *gearwa*.

Gert, [384](#).

See *Gart*.

Giffis, give thou, (lit. give ye, the plural being used in addressing the king), [463](#).

A.S. *gifan*.

Gifyne, given, [1752](#).

Gilt, offended, done wrong, [699](#), [3015](#).

A.S. *gyltan*.

Grehundis, greyhounds, [533](#), [537](#).

“O.N. *grey*, *grey-hundr*, a bitch.” Wedgwood.

Gowerne the, conduct thyself, [1598](#).

Grawis, groves, [2481](#).

Ch. *greves*.

Gyrß, grass, [10](#).

A.S. *gærs*.

Gyß, guise, fashion, custom, [545](#).

Ch. *gise*.

[Haade](#), had, [2150](#).

Habariowne, habergeon, [2889](#).

From *haubergeon*, the French form of Ger. *halsberge*.

See *Hawbrek*.

Habirioune, habergeon, [3380](#).

[Haill](#), whole, [3246](#).

A.S. *hæl*.

Haknay, an ambling horse for a lady, [1730](#).

R. *hacquenée*.

Half; *in the phrase* on arthuris *half*, i.e. on Arthur's *side*, [883](#).

Compare use of Germ. *halb*.

Halk, a hawk, [1736](#), [2482](#).

A.S. *hafoc*.

Hall,

Hoil,

Holl,

Hail,

various spellings of Haill, whole.

Hals, neck, [1054](#).

A.S. *hals*. Goth. *hals*.

Hant, to exercise, practise, [2191](#).

Fr. *hanter*, lit. to frequent.

Hardement, [801](#), [2669](#),

Hardyment, [900](#), [3362](#),

hardihood, boldness.

R. *hardement*.

Harrold, herald, [1047](#).

Hate, hot, [2552](#).

Havith, hath, [1940](#);

have, [3404](#).

Hawbrek, [1070](#), [1200](#),

Hawbryk, [3112](#),

hauberk, neck-defence;

Ger. *hals-berge*, armour for the neck.

Hawnt, to use, [3418](#).

See [Hant](#).

Hawntis, exercise, [2772](#).

He, high, [1969](#), [2552](#).

A.S. *háh*.

Hecht, hight, is called, [2140](#);
was called, [2290](#).

Hecht, to promise, [3101](#);
promised (*past part.*), [1142](#).
A.S. *hátan*.

Hedis, heads, [538](#), [869](#).

Hewy, [442](#),

Heuy, [459](#),

heavy.

A.S. *hefig*.

Hie, [550](#),

Hye, [297](#),

high.

See [He](#).

Hienes, highness, [126](#).

Ho, pause, stop, cessation, [2970](#).

According to J. radically the same with the verb *Houe*, or *How* (see [Houit](#)).

The Dutch, however, use *hou*, hold! from *houden*, to hold.

Holl, whole, [106](#), [745](#).

Hore, hair, [365](#).

“Holȝe were his yȝen and vnder campe hores.”

(Early English Alliterative Poems; *ed.* Morris. See Poem B. l. 1695.)

The meaning of the line quoted is, “Hollow were his eyes, and under bent hairs.”

Hot, hight, was called, [754](#), [806](#);
is called, [1950](#).

A.S. *hátan* (neuter).

Houit, delayed, tarried, halted, [996](#).

“W. *hofian*, *hofio*, to fluctuate, hover, suspend,” Morris.

Hovith, stays, halts, [2829](#).

Howit, halted, [2814](#), [2842](#).

Howyns, halts, tarries, [2821](#).

Probably miswritten for “howyng.”

Hufyng, halting, delaying, [1046](#).

Hundyre, a hundred, [756](#), [1554](#).

I, in, [332](#).

Dan. *i*; Icel. *í*.

Iclosit, y-closed; i.e. enclosed, shut in, [53](#).

If, to give, [554](#).

In lines [1718-1910](#) the word occurs repeatedly in several forms; as *iffis*, *iffith*, *giveth*; *iffis*, give ye (put for give thou); *ifyne*, given, etc.

Ifyne, to give, [3454](#).

Iftis, gifts, [1741](#).

In the line preceding we have *giftis*.

Ilk; the ilk (= thilk) that, [629](#), [1601](#).

Literally, the ilk = the same.

A.S. *ylc*. See [1367](#).

Ilk, each, [2211](#), etc.

A.S. *ælc*.

Illumynare, luminary, [3](#).

Incontinent,

Incontynent,

immediately, [253](#), [1215](#), [2647](#), [2834](#).

Still used in French.

In-to-contynent (= Incontinent), [3020](#).

In to, used for “in;” *passim*.

Iornaye, journey, [680](#).

Irk, to become slothful, grow weary, tire, [2709](#).

A.S. *eargian*.

Iuperty, combat, [2547](#).

Fr. *jeu parti*, a thing left undecided;

hence the meanings, 1. strife, conflict; 2. jeopardy, as in Ch.

See J.; and Tyrwhitt’s note to C. T. 16211.

Iwond, [245](#),

Iwondit, [226](#),

wounded.

We find in A.S. both *wúnd* and *wúnded*.

I-wyß, certainly, of a surety, [1709](#), [1925](#), [1938](#).

A.S. *gewís*; Ger. *gewiss*. Often *wrongly* interpreted to mean, *I know*.

See [Wit](#).

[Kend](#), known, [548](#), [906](#).

[Laif](#), the remainder (lit. what is *left*), [1802](#), [3472](#).

A.S. *láf*. Burns has “the *lave*.”

Lametable, lamentable, [3265](#).

The omission of the *n* occurs again in [l. 2718](#), where we have *lemytable*.

Larges, liberality, [608](#), [1681](#), [1750](#).

Fr. *largesse*.

Larg, prodigal, profuse, [2434](#).

Lat, impediment, [958](#).

A.S. *lǣtan*, means (1) to suffer, (2) to hinder.

Lat, to let, permit (used as an auxiliary verb), [803](#).

Latith, preventeth, [1927](#).

Lawrare, a laurel, [82](#).

Ch. *laurer*.

Learis, liars, [493](#).

Led, put down, beat down, depressed, overpowered, [2663](#).

It is the past tense of A.S. *lecgan*, to lay, to cause to submit, to kill.

Lef, to live, [564](#), [3230](#).

Leful, lawful, [1427](#).

Legis, lieges, subjects, [1957](#).

R. *lige*; Lat. *ligatus*.

Leich, leech, physician, [106](#).

A.S. *lǣce*; Dan. *læge*.

See [520](#), [2056](#).

Leif, to live, [952](#), [1392](#).

A.S. *lybban*; Goth. *liban*.

Leir, to learn, [1993](#).

Comp. D. *leeren*.

Lest, to list, to please, [555](#), [621](#).

A.S. *lystan*.

Lest, to last out against, sustain, [811](#).

A.S. *lǣstan*.

Lest, least, [1628](#).

Let, hindrance, [2495](#).

Leuch, laughed, [3240](#).

A.S. *hlihan*, past tense *ic hloh*.

Lewis, liveth, [1209](#).

Lewith, left, deserted, [1854](#).

Liging, [376](#).

The sense requires *lay*, i.e. the 3rd p. s. pt. t. *indic.*, but properly the word is

the present participle, *lying*.

Longith, belongeth, [738](#), [1921](#), [2429](#), [2778](#).

Compare Dan. *lange*, to reach.

Longith, belonged, [3242](#).

Longyne, belonging, [433](#).

Lorn, lost, [2092](#);

destroyed, [2740](#).

See *For-lorn*.

Loß, praise, [1777](#).

Lat. *laus*. Ch. has *losed*, praised.

Low,

Lowe,

(1) law, [1602](#), [1628](#), [1636](#), etc.

(2) love, [29](#), [1620](#).

It is sometimes hard to say which is meant.

Compare Dan. *lov*, law; A.S. *luf*, love.

Luges, tents, [874](#), [881](#), [2500](#), [2680](#).

Fr. *loge*, *logis*; Ger. *laube*, a bower, from *laub*, foliage; Gothic *laúf*, a leaf.

Lugyne, a lodging, tent, [891](#).

Lyt, a little, [1233](#).

At lyte, in little, used as an expletive, [143](#).

[Ma](#), short form of Make, [953](#).

Maad, made, [697](#).

Magre of, in spite of, [500](#), [960](#), [2679](#), [2702](#), [2711](#).

Sometimes “magre” is found without “of.”

Fr. *mal gré*.

Matalent,

Matelent,

displeasure, anger, [2169](#), [2660](#).

In both cases Mr Stevenson wrongly has *malalent*.

R. *maltaient*, *mautalent*.

Mayne, [1026](#).

See [Men](#).

Medyre, mediator (?), [1624](#).

I am not at all sure of this word, but we find in R. many strange forms of “mediator,” such as *méener*, *méeisneres*, etc. In the Supplement to the “Dictionnaire de l’Academie” we find *mediaire*, qui occupe le milieu, from Low Lat. *mediarius*.

N.B. In the MS. the “d” is indistinct.

See *mediare* in Ducange.

Meit, to dream, [363](#).

A.S. *mætan*.

Mekill, much, [876](#), [1236](#).

Mokil, [1265](#).

Melle, contest, battle, [2619](#).

Fr. *melée*, J.

Memoratyve, mindful, bearing in remembrance, [1430](#).

Fr. *mémoratif*.

Men, mean, way; “be ony men” = by any means, [2366](#);
so, too, “be ony mayne,” [1026](#).

Fr. *moyen*.

Men, to tell, declare, [510](#).

A.S. *mænan*.

Menye, a company, multitude (without special reference to number); whence
“a few menye,” a small company, [751](#).

Apparently from A.S. *menigu*; Ger. *menge*; but it may have nothing to do with the modern word *many*, and is more probably from the O.F. *maisnée*, a household.

Met, dreamt, [440](#).

See [Meit](#).

Meyne, [41](#).

See [Men](#).

Misgyit, misguided, [1663](#).

R. *guier*.

Mo, more, [3187](#), etc.

A.S. *má*.

Mon, man, [96](#).

Moneth, month, [569](#).

A.S. *mónáð*; Goth. *menoth*.

Morow, morning, [1](#), [30](#), [64](#), [341](#).

Goth. *maúrgins*.

Mot, must, [195](#).

A.S. *ic mót*.

Mys, a fault, [1888](#), [1937](#), [3230](#).

A.S. *mis*. Do o myß, to commit a fault, [1926](#).

Mysour, measure, [1830](#).

Myster, need, [1877](#), [2322](#).

Ch. *mistere*; R. *mester*; Lat. *ministerium*. Cf. Ital. *mestiere*.

[Nat](#), naught, [703](#).

Shortened from A.S. *ná wuht*, i.e. *no whit*.

Nece, nephew, [2200](#), [2245](#), [2720](#).

R. *niez*.

Nedlyngis, of necessity, [2337](#), J.

A.S. *neádinga*.

Nemmyt, considered, estimated, [649](#), [2852](#).

A.S. *nemnan*, to name, call.

Ner, near, [441](#).

Neulyngis, newly, again, [36](#), J.

A.S. *níwe-líce* (?).

Newis, for Nevis, nieves, fists, [1222](#).

Icel. *hnefi*. Dan. *næve*. Burns has *nieve*; Shakspeare *neif*.

Noght, not, [1182](#).

Noiß, nose, [2714](#).

R. *néis*.

Nome, name, [226](#), [320](#), [1546](#), [3341](#).

Fr. *nomme*.

Nome, took, [591](#), [1048](#).

A.S. *niman*, past tense, *ic nám*.

Northeast, north-east, [677](#).

Not (shortened from Ne wot), know not, [522](#), [3144](#).

A.S. *nát*, from *nitan* = *ne witan*.

Not, naught, [720](#).

See [Nat](#).

Noyith, annoyeth, [904](#).

Fr. *nuire*. Lat. *nocere*.

Noyt, annoyed, offended, [471](#).

Nys,

Nyce,

(nice), foolish, [127](#), [1946](#).

Fr. *niais*.

[O](#), a, an, *passim*; one, a single, [2998](#), [3003](#), [3393](#), etc.

Obeisand, obedient, [641](#).

Obeß, obey, [2134](#).

Oblist, obliged, [969](#).

Occupy, to use, employ, [3457](#);
to dwell, [75](#).

Lat. *occupare*.

Of, with, [66](#).

Oft-syß, oft-times, [2304](#), [2594](#), [2789](#), [2885](#), [2929](#).

See [Syß](#).

On, and, [519](#).

Possibly a mistake.

One, on, often used for In; One to = unto.

Onan,

Onone,
Onon,

anon, [158](#), [1466](#), [2602](#), etc.

The form “onan,” [l. 3086](#), suggests the derivation of *anon*; viz. from A.S. *on-án*, in one; hence, forthwith, immediately.

Onys, once, at some time or other, [3013](#);
at onys, at once, [3187](#).

Opin, [1286](#),
Opine, [13](#),

open.

Or, ere, before, [77](#), [1887](#), [2545](#).
A.S. *ær*.

Ordand, to set in array, [784](#);
to prepare, procure, [1713](#).
R. *ordener*; Lat. *ordinare*.

Ordan, to provide, [2416](#), [2777](#).

Ordynat, ordained, [490](#).
See [l. 507](#).

Orest (= Arest), to arrest, stop, [3186](#).

Orient, east, [5](#).

Oucht, it; it is the duty of (= Lat. *debet*), [2995](#).
Strictly, we should here have had “it owes” (*debet*), not “it ought” (*debuit*).
See [Aw](#).

Ourfret, over-adorned, decked out, [71](#), [2480](#).
A.S. *frætwian*, to trim, adorn.

Out-throng (= Lat. *expressit*), expressed, uttered, [65](#).
A.S. *út*, out, and *þringan*, to press.

Owtrag, outrage, [3454](#).

R. *outrage*; Ital. *oltraggio*, from Lat. *ultra*.

The MS. has *outray*, probably owing to confusion with *affray* in the same line.
We find “owtrag” in [l. 2578](#).

Oyß, to use, [1701](#), J.

[Paid](#), pleased; ill paid, displeased, [908](#).

Low Lat. *pagare*, to pay, satisfy.

Palzonis, pavilions, tents, [734](#);

plural of

Paljoune, a pavilion, a tent, [1305](#).

R. gives *pavillon*, a tent; cf. Low Lat. *papilio*, a tent.

Pan, pain, [1273](#).

Pas hyme, to pace, go, [362](#).

Paß, to go, [1213](#).

Pasing, pacing, departing, [371](#);

surpassing, [303](#), [346](#), [689](#), etc.

Pens, to think of, [1431](#).

Fr. *penser*.

Planly, at once, [3319](#).

J. gives “Playn, out of hand, like Fr. *de plain*.” In the same line “of” = off.

Plant, plaint, complaint, [137](#).

Fr. *plainte*.

Plesance, Plesans, pleasure, [941](#), [1939](#).

Plessith, pleases, [68](#).

Possede, to possess, [578](#).

Fr. *posseder*.

Poware, a power, a strong band of men, [2647](#). We now say *force*.

Powert, poverty, [1330](#), [1744](#).

Pref, to prove, [2229](#), [3476](#).

Prekand, pricking, spurring, [3089](#).

See the very first l. of Spenser’s *Faerie Queene*.

Prekyne, [2890](#), showy(?), gaudy(?).

J. gives “Preek, to be spruce; to crest; as ‘A bit *preekin* bodie,’ one attached to dress; *to prick*, to dress oneself.”

Compare D. *prijcken*.

Pretend, to attempt, aspire to, [3282](#), [3465](#).

Fr. *prétendre*. So, too, in lines [559](#), [583](#).

Pretendit, endeavour, attempt, [3442](#).

Process, narration, [316](#).

Wright gives “Proces, a story or relation, a process.” The writer is referring to his prologue or introduction.

Promyt, to promise, [965](#).

Proponit, proposed, [361](#), [445](#).

Pupil, people, [285](#).

Puple, people, [1367](#), [1498](#), [1520](#).

Pur, [1648](#),

Pure, [1697](#),

Pwre, [1655](#),

poor.

[Quh-](#). Words beginning thus begin in modern English with Wh. Thus, Quhen = when, etc.

Quhilk (whilk), which, [184](#).

A.S. *hwylc* = Lat. *qualis* rather than *qui*.

Quhill, while, *used as a noun*, [1229](#), [1293](#).

A.S. *hwíl*, a period of time.

Quhill, until, [24](#), [198](#).

See [Whill](#).

Quhy; the quhy = the why, the reason, [123](#), [1497](#).

Qwhelis, wheels, [736](#).

A.S. *hweol*.

Qwheyar, whether, [1187](#).

Quhois,

Qwhois,

whose, [171](#), [1297](#).

[Rachis](#), hounds, [531](#).

Su-G. *racka*, a bitch, which from the v. *racka*, to race, course. Perhaps connected with *brach*.

Radur, fear, [1489](#), J.

From Su-G. *rædd*, fearful; Dan. *ræd*.

Raddour, [2133](#),

Radour, [1835](#), [3465](#),

fear.

Raid, rode, [3070](#), [3260](#), etc.

Ralef, relieve, [3364](#).

Ramed, remedy, [117](#).

See [Remed](#).

Randoune, in, [2542](#).

The corresponding line ([1. 739](#)) suggests that *in Randoune* = *al about*, i.e. in a circuit. But if we translate it by “in haste,” or “in great force,” we keep nearer to the true etymology. In Ogilvie’s Imperial Dictionary, s.v. Random, we find the Nor. Fr. *randonnée* explained to mean the “sweeping circuit made by a wounded and frightened animal;” but the true meaning of *randonnée* is certainly *force, impetuosity*; see R., Cotgrave, etc. In Danish, *rand* is a surrounding edge or margin; while in Dutch we find *rondom* round about.

Raquer, require, [2409](#).

Raß, race, swift course, [3088](#).

A.S. *ræs*. Compare Eng. *mill-race*, and D. *ras*.

Recidens, delay, [2359](#).

R. *residier*, to defer.

Recist, resist, [566](#), [660](#), [2578](#).

Recounterit, met (in a hostile manner), encountered, [2958](#).

Fr. *rencontrer*.

Record, witness, testimony; hence value, [388](#).

R. *record*.

Recorde, to speak of, mention;

hard recorde, heard say, [121](#), [595](#).

Recorde, speak out, [454](#), [481](#).

See R. *recorder*.

Recordith, is suitable, belongs, [606](#).

Recourse, to return, [1798](#).

Lat. *recurrere*.

Red, to advise, [1027](#), [1198](#).

A.S. *rádan*; Goth. *rêdan*.

Relewit (relieved), lifted up again, rescued, [2617](#).

Fr. *relever*. J.

Remede, [89](#),

Remed, [718](#),

remedy.

Remuf, remove, [655](#).

Report, to narrate, [266](#);
to explain, [294](#);
to state, [320](#).

Reprefe, reproof, defeat, [764](#).

Reput, he reputed, i.e. thought, considered, [743](#).

Resautit, received, [2796](#).

Resawit, received, kept, [2106](#).

We should have expected to find “reseruit.”

Resonite, resounded, [66](#).

Resydens, delay, [670](#).

See [Recidens](#).

Revare, [275](#),

Rewar, [2893](#),

Rewere, [2812](#),

river.

Reweyll, proud, haughty, [2853](#).

R. *revelé*, fier, hautain, orgueilleux. Compare Lat. *rebellare*.

Richwysneß, righteousness, [1406](#).

A.S. *rihtwísnes*.

Rigne, [94](#), [1527](#),

Ring, [1468](#),

Ringe, [1325](#),

a kingdom.

Fr. *régne*. Ch. *regne*.

Rignis, kingdoms, [1858](#).

Rignis, Rignith, reigneth, [1825](#), [782](#).

Ringne, a kingdom, [1952](#).

Rout, a company, a band, [812](#), [2956](#), [3403](#).

Rowt, [2600](#).

Rowmyth, roometh, i.e. makes void, empties, [3390](#).

A.S. *rúmian*.

Rown, run; *past part.* [2488](#), [2820](#).

Rwn, run, [2545](#).

Rygnis, kingdoms, [1904](#).

Ryne, to run, [113](#). See [2952](#).

Ryng, to reign, [1409](#), [2130](#).

[Sa](#), so, [3322](#), [3406](#).

Dan. *saa*.

Saade, said, [698](#).

Salust, saluted, [546](#), [919](#), [1553](#), [2749](#).

Ch. *salewe*.

Salosing, salutation, [1309](#).

Sar, sorely, [1660](#).

Sauch, saw, [817](#), [1219](#), [1225](#).

A.S. *ic seáh*, from *seón*.

Schawin, shewn, [2387](#).

Schent, disgraced, ruined, [1880](#).

A.S. *scendan*; Dan. *skiænde*.

Schrewit, accursed, [1945](#).

Scilla, the name of a bird, also called Ciris, [2483](#).

——“plumis in avem mutata vocatur
Ciris, et a tonso est hoc nomen adepta capillo.”
(Ovid, Met. viii. [150](#).)

Screwis, shrews, ill-natured persons, [1053](#).

More often used of males than females in old authors.

Sedulis, letters, [142](#).

R. *cedule*.

Sege, a seat, [2258](#).

Fr. *siége*.

Semble, a warlike assembly, hostile gathering, [988](#), [2206](#).

Semblit, assembled, [845](#).

G. *sammeln*; from Goth. *sama*, *samana*.

Semblyng, encountering, [2951](#).

See [Assemble](#).

Sen, since, [709](#), [800](#), etc.

Sen at, since that. In Piers Plowman we find *syn*.

Septure, sceptre, [666](#).

Sere, several, various, [594](#), [731](#), [746](#).

“Su-G. *sær*, adv. denoting separation.” J. Cf. Lat. *se-*.

Sess, to cease, [14](#), etc.

Fr. *cesser*.

Set, although.

Sew, to follow up, seek, [2326](#).

R. *suir*; Fr. *suivre*.

Sew, to follow up, go, proceed, [3145](#).

Sewyt, [2614](#).

Shauyth, shewith, [412](#).

Sice, such, [2115](#).

Scotch, *sic*.

Snybbyth, snubs, checks, [3387](#).

Comp. D. *sneb*, a beak; *snebbig*, snappish.

Sobing, sobbing, moaning, [2658](#).

Socht,

Soght,

sought to go; and hence, made his (or their) way, proceeded, went, [2619](#), [3179](#), [3357](#), [3428](#).

Sought one, advanced upon, attacked, [3149](#), [3311](#).

Sought to, made his way to, [3130](#).

A.S. *sécan*, past tense *ic sóhte*, to seek, approach, go towards.

Sor, sorrow, anxiety, [74](#).

A.S. *sorh*; Goth. *saúrga*.

Sort, lot, fate, [26](#).

Fr. *sort*.

Sound, to be consonant with, [149](#).

See Gloss. to Tyrwhitt's Chaucer.

Lat. *sonare*.

Soundith, [1811](#). "So the puple soundith," so the opinion of the people tends.

"As fer as *souneth* into honestee."

(Chaucer: *Monkes Prologue*.)

Soundith, tend, [1943](#);

tends, [149](#).

Sown, sound, [1035](#).

Fr. *son*.

Sownis, sounds, [772](#), [3436](#).

Spent, fastened, clasped, [2809](#).

A.S. *spannan*, to clasp, join. Comp. Dan. *spænde*, to stretch, span, buckle together.

Spere,

Spir,

sphere, [6](#), [170](#);

speris, spheres, circuits, [24](#).

Spere, to inquire, [1170](#).

A.S. *spirian*, to track. Cf. G. *spur*.

Sperithis, spear's, [810](#).

Spill, to destroy, ruin, [1990](#).

A.S. *spillan*.

Spreit, spirit, [81](#), [364](#).

Stak, [226](#). J. gives "to the steeks, *completely*;" and this is the sense here.

See Jamieson: s.v. "Steik." Halliwell gives *stake*, to block up; also *steck*, a stopping place (cf. Shakespeare's *sticking-place*, Macb. i. vii. l. 60). In the N. of France it is said of one killed or severely wounded, *il a eu son estoque*, he has had his belly-ful; from *estoquer*, to cram, satiate, "stodge." Compare Ital. *stucco*, cloyed. It has also been suggested that *to the stak* may mean to the *stock*, i.e. up to the hilt, very deeply.

Start, started up, leapt, [994](#), [1094](#).

Stede, stead, place, [218](#), [1124](#).

A.S. *stede*.

Steir, to stir, [817](#).

A.S. *stirian*.

Stekith, shuts, [1651](#).

Ger. *stecken*. Burns has *steek*.

Stek, shut, concluded, [316](#).

Stell, steel, [809](#).

Stell commonly means a stall, or fixed place; but the form *stell* for *steel* occurs; e.g. “Brounstelle was heuy and also kene.” *Arthur*, l. 97.

Sterapis, [3056](#),

Steropis, [3132](#),

stirrups.

A.S. *stí-rap* or *stíge-ráp*, from *stígan*, to mount, and *ráp*, rope.

Stere, ruler, arbiter, [1020](#);

control, guidance, [1974](#).

Stere, to rule, control, [1344](#), [2884](#),

A.S. *stýran*.

Stere, to stir, move, go, [3430](#).

See [Steir](#).

Sterith, stirreth, [2829](#).

Sterf, to die, [1028](#).

A.S. *steorfan*.

Sterit, governed, [612](#).

A.S. *stýran*.

Stert, started, [377](#).

Stok, the stake to which a baited bear is chained, [3386](#).

Stour, conflict, [1108](#), [2607](#), [3124](#).

R. *estour*.

Straucht, stretched out, [3090](#).

A.S. *streccan*, past part. *gestreht*.

Strekih, stretcheth, i.e. exciteth to his full stride, [3082](#).

Subiet, [1799](#),

Subeit, [1828](#),

Subiet, [1878](#),

subject; subjects.

Sudandly, Sodandly, suddenly, [1009](#), [1876](#).

Suet, sweet, [331](#).

Suppris, (surprise), overwhelming power, [691](#), [860](#), [2651](#);
oppression, [1352](#).

Fr. *surprendre*, to catch unawares.

Supprisit, overwhelmed, [1237](#), [1282](#);
overpowered, [2705](#), [3208](#).

Supprisit ded, suddenly killed, [3125](#).

Surrygenis, surgeons, [2726](#).

Suth, sooth, true, [110](#).

A.S. *sóð*.

Suthfastnes, truth, [1183](#).

A.S. *sóðfæstnes*.

Sutly, soothly, truly, [963](#).

Swelf, a gulf such as is in the centre of a whirlpool, a vortex, [1318](#), J.

A.S. *swelgan*, to swallow up.

Sweuen, a dream, [440](#).

A.S. *swefn*.

Swth, sooth, true, [2753](#).

See [Suth](#).

Syne, [2026](#),

Synne, [2029](#),

sin.

Syne, afterwards, next. J. [45](#), [794](#), etc.

Syß, times, [3054](#).

A.S. *sið*.

[Tais](#), [1095](#), [3005](#),

Taiis, [1141](#).

takes. Abbreviated, as “ma” is from “make.”

See [Ma](#).

Tane, taken, [264](#).

Ten, grief, vexation, [2646](#), [3237](#).

A.S. *teonan*, to vex.

Tennandis, tennants, vassals holding fiefs, [1729](#).

R. *tenancier*.

Than, then, [3111](#).

The, (1) they, (2) thee, (3) thy.

Thelke, that, [709](#).

See [1. 629](#), where *the ilk* occurs; and see [Ilk](#).

Thir, these, those, [2734](#), [2745](#), [2911](#), [3110](#), etc.

Thithingis, tidings, [2279](#).

A.S. *tidan*, to happen.

Tho, then, [545](#), [2221](#);

them, [2368](#).

Thoore, there, [628](#). Thore, [1102](#).

Thrid, third, [370](#), [2347](#), [2401](#).

A.S. *þrida*.

Throng, closely pressed, crowded, [3366](#).

A.S. *þringan*.

Til, to; til have, to have, [706](#).

Tint, lost, [1384](#).

See [Tyne](#).

Tithandis, tidings, [2310](#).

Tithingis, tidings, [902](#), [2336](#).

To, too, besides, [3045](#).

Togidder, together, [254](#).

To-kerwith, carves or cuts to pieces; al to-kerwith, cuts all to pieces, [868](#).

A.S. *to-ceorfian*. The prefix *to-* is intensive, and forms a part of the verb. See Judges ix. [53](#): “All to-brake his skull;” i.e. utterly brake; sometimes misprinted “all to break” (!).

Ton, taken, [1054](#), [1071](#).

Ton, one; the ton, the one, [1822](#).

The tone = A.S. *þæt áne*.

To-schent, disfigured, [1221](#).

The intensive form of the A.S. verb *scendan*, to shame, destroy. In the same line we have *to-hurt*, and in the next line *to-rent*, words modelled on the same form. We find, e.g., in Spenser, the forms *all to-rent*, *all to-brus'd*. (See the note on the prefix *To-* in the Glossary to William of Palerne.)

Tothir, the other, [2536](#).

The tothir = A.S. *þæt opere*, where *þæt* is the neuter gender of the definite article. Burns has *the tither*.

Toyer (= tother), the other;

y being written for the A.S. *þ* (*th*), [2571](#), [2584](#).

Traist, to trust, to be confident, [390](#), [1129](#), [1149](#), J.

Trast, [1659](#).

Traisting of (trusting), reliance upon, or expectation of, [25](#), J.

Translat, [508](#),

Transulat, [2204](#),

to transfer, remove.

Tratry, treachery, [3224](#).

See R. *traïtor*.

Trety, treatise, [145](#).

Fr. *traité*.

Trewis, truce, [1568](#), [2488](#), [2545](#).

Tronsione, [239](#),

Trunscyoune, [2962](#),

Trownsclown, [2890](#),

a truncheon, a stump of a spear.

Fr. *tronçon*; from Lat. *truncus*.

In the last passage it means a sceptre, *bâton*.

“One hytte hym vpon the oldé wounde
Wyth A tronchon of an ore;” (oar.)
(Le Morte Arthur, l. 3071.)

Troucht, truth, [161](#).

Tueching, [403](#),

Tweching, [386](#),

touching.

Tyne, to lose, [1258](#), [1387](#).

Icel. *týna*.

Tynith, loseth, [1761](#).

Tynt, lost, [175](#), [1384](#), [1521](#).

[Unwist](#), unknown, [1140](#).

[Valis](#), falls; we should read “falís,” [2475](#).

Valkyne, to waken, [8](#).

See [Awalk](#).

Vall, billow, wave, [1317](#).

Ger. *welle*, a wave; *quelle*, a spring;

Icel. *vella*, to *well* up, boil. Cf. also A.S. *wæl*; Du. *wiel*; Lancashire *weele*, an eddy, whirlpool. So, too, in Burns:—

“Whyles owre a linn the burnie plays,
As thro’ the glen it wimpl’t;
Whyles round a rocky scaur it stays,
Whyles in a *wiel* it dimpl’t.”

Varand, to warrant, protect, [3411](#).

R. *warandir*.

Varnit, warned, [622](#).

Vassolag, a deed of prowess.

Pasing vassolag, surpassing valour, [257](#).

R. has *vasselage*, courage, valour, valourous deeds, as indicative of the

fulfilment of the duties of a *vassal*. We now speak of rendering *good service*.

Vassolage, valour, [2724](#).

Veir, were, [818](#).

Veris, wars, [305](#).

See [Were](#).

Veryng, were, [2971](#).

A.S. *wéron*.

Vicht, a wight, a person, [10](#), [55](#), [67](#).

A.S. *wiht*.

Virslyng, wrestling, struggling, [3384](#).

J. gives the forms *warsell*, *wersill*.

Visare, wiser, [607](#).

Viting, to know, [410](#).

A.S. *witan*.

Vncouth, lit. *unknown*; hence little known, rare, valuable, [1734](#).

A.S. *uncúð*.

Vodis, woods, [1000](#).

Vombe, womb, bowels, [375](#).

Goth. *wamba*.

Vondit, wounded, [700](#).

Vpwarpith, warped up, i.e. drawn up, [63](#).

See Note to this line. It occurs in Gawain Douglas's prologue to his translation of the [12](#)th Book of the *Æneid*.

Du. *opwerpen*, from Goth. *waírpan*, to cast.

Vsyt, used, [1197](#), [1208](#).

Vyre, a cross-bow bolt, [1092](#).

R. *vire*; cf. Lat. *vertere*.

[Wald](#), would, [419](#), [470](#), etc.

Walkin, to waken, wake, [1239](#).

See [Awalk](#).

Wapnis, weapons, [241](#).

A.S. *wápen*, or *wápn*.

Ward, world, [3184](#).

Grose's Provincial Dictionary gives *Ward* = world; and the omission of the *l* is not uncommon; see *Genesis and Exodus* (E.E.T.S.), ll. 32, 1315.

Wassolage, valour, [2708](#).

See [Vassolag](#).

Wat, know, [512](#).

Wawasouris, vavasours, [1729](#).

A *Vavasour* was a sub-vassal, holding a small fief dependent on a larger fief; a sort of esquire.

R. *vavaseur*.

Weil, very. Weil long, a very long time, [79](#).

Comp. Ger. *viel*, J.

Wencussith, vanquisheth, [3331](#);

vanquished, [3337](#).

Wencust, vanquished, [2841](#).

Wend, (1) to go, [2191](#);

(2) weened, thought, [3481](#).

Wentail, ventaile, a part of the helmet which opened to admit air, [1056](#).

R. *ventaile*; from Lat. *ventus*.

Were, (1) war. Fr. *guerre*. R. *werre*, [308](#), etc.

(2) doubt, [84](#), etc. "But were," without doubt. A.S. *wær*, cautious, *wary*.

(3) worse, [1930](#). Burns has *waur*.

Wering, weary, [58](#).

A.S. *wérig*.

Werray, very, true, [1262](#), [2017](#).

Werroure, warrior, [248](#).

Weriour, warrior, [663](#).

Wers, worse, [515](#).

Weryng, were, [2493](#).

Wex, to be grieved, be vexed, [156](#).

Weyn, vain, [382](#), [524](#).

Weyne, *in phr.* but weyne, without doubt, [2880](#).

A.S. *wénan*, to ween, to suppose.

Whill, until, [1136](#), J. Formed from A.S. *hwíl*, a period of time.

Wice, advice, counsel, [1909](#).

Shortened from Awys.

Wichsaif, vouchsafe, [355](#), [1391](#).

Wichsauf, *id.* [2364](#).

Wicht, wight, person, [131](#).

Wicht, strong, nimble, [248](#).

“Su-G. *wig*” J. Sw. *vig*.

Wight, with, [918](#). Possibly miswritten.

Wist, knew, [225](#), [1047](#). See *Wit*.

Wit, to know, [268](#).

A.S. *witan*; pres. *ic wát*, past tense, *ic wiste*.

Wit, knowledge, [2504](#).

With, by, [723](#).

Withschaif, vouchsafe, [1458](#).

With-thy, on this condition, [961](#).

See *For-thy*.

Wnkouth, little known, [146](#). See *Vncouth*.

Wnwemmyt, undefiled, [2097](#).

A.S. *wam*, *wem*, a spot.

Wnwyst, unknown, secretly, [219](#), [269](#).

Wod (wood), mad, [3334](#), [3440](#).

A.S. *wód*. Goth. *wôds*.

Woid, mad, [2695](#). Perhaps we should read *woud*.

Wonde, wand, rod, or sceptre of justice, [1601](#), [1891](#). J.

Wonk, winked, [1058](#).

Wonne, to dwell, [2046](#). A.S. *wunian*.

Worschip, honour, [1158](#), [1164](#).

A.S. *weorð-scipe*.

Wot, know, [192](#), etc. See [Wit](#).

Wox, voice, [13](#).

Lat. *vox*.

Woyß, voice, [3473](#).

Wrechitnes, misery, [2102](#);

miserliness, niggardliness, [1795](#), [1859](#).

Wy, reason; “to euery wy,” for every reason, on all accounts, [2356](#).

Compare *Quhy*.

Wycht, strong, nimble, [2592](#).

See [Wicht](#).

Wynyth, getteth, acquireth, [1832](#).

Wyre, a cross-bow bolt, [3290](#).

See [Vyre](#).

Wys, vice, [1795](#).

Wysis, [1540](#).

[Y](#), written for “th.” Thus we find “oyer” for “other,” etc. The error arose with scribes who did not understand either the true form or force of the old symbol þ.

Yaf, gave, [387](#).

Yald, yield, [553](#);

yielded, [558](#).

A.S. *gildan*.

Yclepit, called, [414](#).

Yef, give, [563](#).

Yeif, give, [923](#).

Yer, year, [610](#).

Used instead of the plural “yeris,” as in [l. 3243](#).

Yewyne, given, [1500](#).

Ygrave, buried, [1800](#).

Comp. Ger. *begraben*.

Yhere, ear, [1576](#).

Yher, year, [2064](#).

Used instead of “yheris,” [3243](#).

Yhis, yes, [1397](#).

Yis, yes, [514](#);

this, [160](#).

Ylys, isles, [2858](#), [2882](#).

Ymong, among, [821](#).

Yneuch, enough, [2135](#).

A.S. *genog*.

Yolde, yielded (to be), [951](#), [1088](#).

Ystatut, appointed, [2529](#).

Fr. *statuer*.

Ywyß, certainly, [1798](#), [1942](#).

See [Iwyß](#).

[3eme](#), to take of, regard, have respect to, [665](#).

A.S. *géman*.

3ere, year, [342](#).

3erys, years, [23](#), [1432](#).

3ewith, giveth, [1772](#).

3ha, yes, [2843](#).

Ger. *ja*.

3he, ye, [921](#).

Observe that, as in this line, *ye* (A.S. *ge*) is the *nominative*, and *you* (A.S. *eów*) the *objective* case.

3hed, went, [1486](#)

Ch. has *yede*.

A.S. *ic eóde*, past tense of *gán*, to go.

Goth. *ik iddja*, past tense of *gaggan*, to go.

3her, year, [2064](#), [2274](#).

3hing, young, [2868](#).

3his, yes, [1397](#).

3houth-hed, youth-hood, youth, [2772](#).

3hud, went, [2696](#).

See [3hed](#).

3is, yes, [3406](#).

3olde, yielded, [291](#), [380](#), [951](#).

A.S. *ic geald*, past tense of *gyldan*, to pay, to yield.

3ude, went, [2944](#).

See [3hed](#).

INDEX OF NAMES, ETC.

Albanak, [202](#), [1447](#).

Alexander, [1837](#).

Alphest, [57](#).

Amytans, [1304](#), [2446](#).

Angus, [2858](#).

April, [1](#).

Arachell, [434](#).

Aries, [336](#).

Arthur (*passim*).

Ban, [202](#), [1447](#).

Bible, the, [1483](#).

Brandellis, [3086](#).

Brandymagus, [2884](#), [3430](#).

Camelot, [275](#), [280](#), [357](#), [407](#).

Cardole, [2153](#).

Carlisle, [347](#).

Christ, [2046](#).

Clamedeus, [2881](#), [3259](#).

Dagenet, [278](#).

Daniel, [1365](#).

Danzelome, [435](#).

Esquyris, [2591](#), [2609](#), etc.

First-conquest king, [1064](#), etc.; [2568](#), etc.

Gahers, [3087](#).

Galiot (*passim*).

Galys Gwyans, [2605](#), [2613](#), etc.

Galgantynis, [599](#).

Galloway, [2690](#).

Gawane (*passim*).

Gwynans or Gwyans. See [Galys](#).

Gyonde or Gyande, [302](#), [551](#), [637](#).

Harwy, [2853](#), [3206](#), etc.

Herynes (*i.e.* Hermes), [436](#).

Hundred knights, king of, [1545](#), [1554](#).

Jhesu, [2046](#), [2096](#).

Kay, [254](#), [355](#), [3081](#), etc.

Lady of the Lake, [220](#), [223](#).

Lancelot (*passim*);

appears as the *red* knight, [991](#), etc.;

as the *black* knight, [2430](#), etc.

Logris, [2301](#).

Maleginis, [806](#).

See [Malenginys](#).

Malenginys, [2873](#), [3151](#), [3155](#).

See also *Hundred knights, king of*.

May, [12](#).

Melvhalt. [283](#). [895](#).

Melyhalt, lady of (*passim*).

Moses, [436](#).

Nembrot (*i.e.* Nimrod), [435](#).

Nohalt, [255](#).

Phœbus, [24](#), [2472](#), [2486](#).

Priapus, [51](#).

Round Table, [795](#), [3213](#).

Saturn, [2474](#).

Scilla, [2483](#).

Solomon, [1378](#).

Sygramors, [3083](#).

Titan, [335](#).

Valydone, [3249](#).

See [Walydeyne](#).

Vanore, [575](#).

See [Wanore](#).

Virgin (Mary), [2049](#), [2087](#), etc.

Venus, [309](#).

Wales, [599](#), [2153](#).

Walydeyne, [2879](#).

Wanore, [230](#).

Wryne, [2867](#).

Ydrus, [2851](#), [3152](#).

Ywan, [2606](#), [2618](#), etc.

Ywons, [2861](#).

Errors and Inconsistencies

In the printed book, some line numbers were moved or omitted for reasons of space; they have been silently regularized. Sidenotes giving folio numbers are shown as printed. Headnotes have been moved to agree with the text, and will generally not coincide with printed page breaks.

An italic form of þ (thorn) was apparently not available to the printer. In the modern parts of the e-text, þ has been italicized when context seems to warrant it. The change in folio labeling from "21, 21b" to "22a, 22b" appears to be accidental.

All brackets [] are in the original. In the two primary texts (French and Scottish), errors in editorial punctuation have been corrected, while other apparent errors are noted but not changed. In the French text, it was assumed that Skeat's word "commas" includes "inverted commas" or quotation marks. The random variation between capital and lower-case letters after an oversized initial is as in the original.

The word "invisible" means that there is an appropriately sized blank space, but the character itself is missing.

The form "reflective" (for "reflexive") is used consistently.

In the primary text, the following unexpected forms are not individually noted:

- capital I at mid-sentence or mid-word
- non-final round s; final long s
- non-initial v; initial u
- word-final fß (apparent "sss")

End of Project Gutenberg's Lancelot of the Laik, by Walter William Skeat

*** END OF THIS PROJECT GUTENBERG EBOOK LANCELOT OF THE LAIK ***

***** This file should be named 36848-h.htm or 36848-h.zip *****
This and all associated files of various formats will be found in:
<http://www.gutenberg.org/3/6/8/4/36848/>

Produced by Louise Hope, Robert Cicconetti and the Online
Distributed Proofreading Team at <http://www.pgdp.net> (This
file was produced from images generously made available
by The Internet Archive/Canadian Libraries)

Updated editions will replace the previous one--the old editions
will be renamed.

Creating the works from public domain print editions means that no
one owns a United States copyright in these works, so the Foundation
(and you!) can copy and distribute it in the United States without

permission and without paying copyright royalties. Special rules, set forth in the General Terms of Use part of this license, apply to copying and distributing Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works to protect the PROJECT GUTENBERG-tm concept and trademark. Project Gutenberg is a registered trademark, and may not be used if you charge for the eBooks, unless you receive specific permission. If you do not charge anything for copies of this eBook, complying with the rules is very easy. You may use this eBook for nearly any purpose such as creation of derivative works, reports, performances and research. They may be modified and printed and given away--you may do practically ANYTHING with public domain eBooks. Redistribution is subject to the trademark license, especially commercial redistribution.

*** START: FULL LICENSE ***

THE FULL PROJECT GUTENBERG LICENSE
PLEASE READ THIS BEFORE YOU DISTRIBUTE OR USE THIS WORK

To protect the Project Gutenberg-tm mission of promoting the free distribution of electronic works, by using or distributing this work (or any other work associated in any way with the phrase "Project Gutenberg"), you agree to comply with all the terms of the Full Project Gutenberg-tm License (available with this file or online at <http://gutenberg.org/license>).

Section 1. General Terms of Use and Redistributing Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works

1.A. By reading or using any part of this Project Gutenberg-tm electronic work, you indicate that you have read, understand, agree to and accept all the terms of this license and intellectual property (trademark/copyright) agreement. If you do not agree to abide by all the terms of this agreement, you must cease using and return or destroy all copies of Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works in your possession. If you paid a fee for obtaining a copy of or access to a Project Gutenberg-tm electronic work and you do not agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement, you may obtain a refund from the person or entity to whom you paid the fee as set forth in paragraph 1.E.8.

1.B. "Project Gutenberg" is a registered trademark. It may only be used on or associated in any way with an electronic work by people who agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement. There are a few things that you can do with most Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works even without complying with the full terms of this agreement. See paragraph 1.C below. There are a lot of things you can do with Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works if you follow the terms of this agreement and help preserve free future access to Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works. See paragraph 1.E below.

1.C. The Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation ("the Foundation" or PGLAF), owns a compilation copyright in the collection of Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works. Nearly all the individual works in the collection are in the public domain in the United States. If an individual work is in the public domain in the United States and you are located in the United States, we do not claim a right to prevent you from copying, distributing, performing, displaying or creating derivative works based on the work as long as all references to Project Gutenberg are removed. Of course, we hope that you will support the Project Gutenberg-tm mission of promoting free access to electronic works by freely sharing Project Gutenberg-tm works in compliance with the terms of

this agreement for keeping the Project Gutenberg-tm name associated with the work. You can easily comply with the terms of this agreement by keeping this work in the same format with its attached full Project Gutenberg-tm License when you share it without charge with others.

1.D. The copyright laws of the place where you are located also govern what you can do with this work. Copyright laws in most countries are in a constant state of change. If you are outside the United States, check the laws of your country in addition to the terms of this agreement before downloading, copying, displaying, performing, distributing or creating derivative works based on this work or any other Project Gutenberg-tm work. The Foundation makes no representations concerning the copyright status of any work in any country outside the United States.

1.E. Unless you have removed all references to Project Gutenberg:

1.E.1. The following sentence, with active links to, or other immediate access to, the full Project Gutenberg-tm License must appear prominently whenever any copy of a Project Gutenberg-tm work (any work on which the phrase "Project Gutenberg" appears, or with which the phrase "Project Gutenberg" is associated) is accessed, displayed, performed, viewed, copied or distributed:

This eBook is for the use of anyone anywhere at no cost and with almost no restrictions whatsoever. You may copy it, give it away or re-use it under the terms of the Project Gutenberg License included with this eBook or online at www.gutenberg.org

1.E.2. If an individual Project Gutenberg-tm electronic work is derived from the public domain (does not contain a notice indicating that it is posted with permission of the copyright holder), the work can be copied and distributed to anyone in the United States without paying any fees or charges. If you are redistributing or providing access to a work with the phrase "Project Gutenberg" associated with or appearing on the work, you must comply either with the requirements of paragraphs 1.E.1 through 1.E.7 or obtain permission for the use of the work and the Project Gutenberg-tm trademark as set forth in paragraphs 1.E.8 or 1.E.9.

1.E.3. If an individual Project Gutenberg-tm electronic work is posted with the permission of the copyright holder, your use and distribution must comply with both paragraphs 1.E.1 through 1.E.7 and any additional terms imposed by the copyright holder. Additional terms will be linked to the Project Gutenberg-tm License for all works posted with the permission of the copyright holder found at the beginning of this work.

1.E.4. Do not unlink or detach or remove the full Project Gutenberg-tm License terms from this work, or any files containing a part of this work or any other work associated with Project Gutenberg-tm.

1.E.5. Do not copy, display, perform, distribute or redistribute this electronic work, or any part of this electronic work, without prominently displaying the sentence set forth in paragraph 1.E.1 with active links or immediate access to the full terms of the Project Gutenberg-tm License.

1.E.6. You may convert to and distribute this work in any binary, compressed, marked up, nonproprietary or proprietary form, including any word processing or hypertext form. However, if you provide access to or distribute copies of a Project Gutenberg-tm work in a format other than "Plain Vanilla ASCII" or other format used in the official version posted on the official Project Gutenberg-tm web site (www.gutenberg.org), you must, at no additional cost, fee or expense to the user, provide a

copy, a means of exporting a copy, or a means of obtaining a copy upon request, of the work in its original "Plain Vanilla ASCII" or other form. Any alternate format must include the full Project Gutenberg-tm License as specified in paragraph 1.E.1.

1.E.7. Do not charge a fee for access to, viewing, displaying, performing, copying or distributing any Project Gutenberg-tm works unless you comply with paragraph 1.E.8 or 1.E.9.

1.E.8. You may charge a reasonable fee for copies of or providing access to or distributing Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works provided that

- You pay a royalty fee of 20% of the gross profits you derive from the use of Project Gutenberg-tm works calculated using the method you already use to calculate your applicable taxes. The fee is owed to the owner of the Project Gutenberg-tm trademark, but he has agreed to donate royalties under this paragraph to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation. Royalty payments must be paid within 60 days following each date on which you prepare (or are legally required to prepare) your periodic tax returns. Royalty payments should be clearly marked as such and sent to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation at the address specified in Section 4, "Information about donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation."
- You provide a full refund of any money paid by a user who notifies you in writing (or by e-mail) within 30 days of receipt that s/he does not agree to the terms of the full Project Gutenberg-tm License. You must require such a user to return or destroy all copies of the works possessed in a physical medium and discontinue all use of and all access to other copies of Project Gutenberg-tm works.
- You provide, in accordance with paragraph 1.F.3, a full refund of any money paid for a work or a replacement copy, if a defect in the electronic work is discovered and reported to you within 90 days of receipt of the work.
- You comply with all other terms of this agreement for free distribution of Project Gutenberg-tm works.

1.E.9. If you wish to charge a fee or distribute a Project Gutenberg-tm electronic work or group of works on different terms than are set forth in this agreement, you must obtain permission in writing from both the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation and Michael Hart, the owner of the Project Gutenberg-tm trademark. Contact the Foundation as set forth in Section 3 below.

1.F.

1.F.1. Project Gutenberg volunteers and employees expend considerable effort to identify, do copyright research on, transcribe and proofread public domain works in creating the Project Gutenberg-tm collection. Despite these efforts, Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works, and the medium on which they may be stored, may contain "Defects," such as, but not limited to, incomplete, inaccurate or corrupt data, transcription errors, a copyright or other intellectual property infringement, a defective or damaged disk or other medium, a computer virus, or computer codes that damage or cannot be read by your equipment.

1.F.2. LIMITED WARRANTY, DISCLAIMER OF DAMAGES - Except for the "Right of Replacement or Refund" described in paragraph 1.F.3, the Project

Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, the owner of the Project Gutenberg-tm trademark, and any other party distributing a Project Gutenberg-tm electronic work under this agreement, disclaim all liability to you for damages, costs and expenses, including legal fees. YOU AGREE THAT YOU HAVE NO REMEDIES FOR NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY, BREACH OF WARRANTY OR BREACH OF CONTRACT EXCEPT THOSE PROVIDED IN PARAGRAPH F3. YOU AGREE THAT THE FOUNDATION, THE TRADEMARK OWNER, AND ANY DISTRIBUTOR UNDER THIS AGREEMENT WILL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR ACTUAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, CONSEQUENTIAL, PUNITIVE OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES EVEN IF YOU GIVE NOTICE OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

1.F.3. LIMITED RIGHT OF REPLACEMENT OR REFUND - If you discover a defect in this electronic work within 90 days of receiving it, you can receive a refund of the money (if any) you paid for it by sending a written explanation to the person you received the work from. If you received the work on a physical medium, you must return the medium with your written explanation. The person or entity that provided you with the defective work may elect to provide a replacement copy in lieu of a refund. If you received the work electronically, the person or entity providing it to you may choose to give you a second opportunity to receive the work electronically in lieu of a refund. If the second copy is also defective, you may demand a refund in writing without further opportunities to fix the problem.

1.F.4. Except for the limited right of replacement or refund set forth in paragraph 1.F.3, this work is provided to you 'AS-IS' WITH NO OTHER WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR ANY PURPOSE.

1.F.5. Some states do not allow disclaimers of certain implied warranties or the exclusion or limitation of certain types of damages. If any disclaimer or limitation set forth in this agreement violates the law of the state applicable to this agreement, the agreement shall be interpreted to make the maximum disclaimer or limitation permitted by the applicable state law. The invalidity or unenforceability of any provision of this agreement shall not void the remaining provisions.

1.F.6. INDEMNITY - You agree to indemnify and hold the Foundation, the trademark owner, any agent or employee of the Foundation, anyone providing copies of Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works in accordance with this agreement, and any volunteers associated with the production, promotion and distribution of Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works, harmless from all liability, costs and expenses, including legal fees, that arise directly or indirectly from any of the following which you do or cause to occur: (a) distribution of this or any Project Gutenberg-tm work, (b) alteration, modification, or additions or deletions to any Project Gutenberg-tm work, and (c) any Defect you cause.

Section 2. Information about the Mission of Project Gutenberg-tm

Project Gutenberg-tm is synonymous with the free distribution of electronic works in formats readable by the widest variety of computers including obsolete, old, middle-aged and new computers. It exists because of the efforts of hundreds of volunteers and donations from people in all walks of life.

Volunteers and financial support to provide volunteers with the assistance they need, are critical to reaching Project Gutenberg-tm's goals and ensuring that the Project Gutenberg-tm collection will remain freely available for generations to come. In 2001, the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation was created to provide a secure and permanent future for Project Gutenberg-tm and future generations.

To learn more about the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation and how your efforts and donations can help, see Sections 3 and 4 and the Foundation web page at <http://www.pglaaf.org>.

Section 3. Information about the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation

The Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation is a non profit 501(c)(3) educational corporation organized under the laws of the state of Mississippi and granted tax exempt status by the Internal Revenue Service. The Foundation's EIN or federal tax identification number is 64-6221541. Its 501(c)(3) letter is posted at <http://pglaaf.org/fundraising>. Contributions to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation are tax deductible to the full extent permitted by U.S. federal laws and your state's laws.

The Foundation's principal office is located at 4557 Melan Dr. S. Fairbanks, AK, 99712., but its volunteers and employees are scattered throughout numerous locations. Its business office is located at 809 North 1500 West, Salt Lake City, UT 84116, (801) 596-1887, email business@pglaaf.org. Email contact links and up to date contact information can be found at the Foundation's web site and official page at <http://pglaaf.org>

For additional contact information:

Dr. Gregory B. Newby
Chief Executive and Director
gbnewby@pglaaf.org

Section 4. Information about Donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation

Project Gutenberg-tm depends upon and cannot survive without wide spread public support and donations to carry out its mission of increasing the number of public domain and licensed works that can be freely distributed in machine readable form accessible by the widest array of equipment including outdated equipment. Many small donations (\$1 to \$5,000) are particularly important to maintaining tax exempt status with the IRS.

The Foundation is committed to complying with the laws regulating charities and charitable donations in all 50 states of the United States. Compliance requirements are not uniform and it takes a considerable effort, much paperwork and many fees to meet and keep up with these requirements. We do not solicit donations in locations where we have not received written confirmation of compliance. To SEND DONATIONS or determine the status of compliance for any particular state visit <http://pglaaf.org>

While we cannot and do not solicit contributions from states where we have not met the solicitation requirements, we know of no prohibition against accepting unsolicited donations from donors in such states who approach us with offers to donate.

International donations are gratefully accepted, but we cannot make any statements concerning tax treatment of donations received from outside the United States. U.S. laws alone swamp our small staff.

Please check the Project Gutenberg Web pages for current donation methods and addresses. Donations are accepted in a number of other ways including checks, online payments and credit card donations. To donate, please visit: <http://pglaaf.org/donate>

Section 5. General Information About Project Gutenberg-tm electronic works.

Professor Michael S. Hart is the originator of the Project Gutenberg-tm concept of a library of electronic works that could be freely shared with anyone. For thirty years, he produced and distributed Project Gutenberg-tm eBooks with only a loose network of volunteer support.

Project Gutenberg-tm eBooks are often created from several printed editions, all of which are confirmed as Public Domain in the U.S. unless a copyright notice is included. Thus, we do not necessarily keep eBooks in compliance with any particular paper edition.

Most people start at our Web site which has the main PG search facility:

<http://www.gutenberg.org>

This Web site includes information about Project Gutenberg-tm, including how to make donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, how to help produce our new eBooks, and how to subscribe to our email newsletter to hear about new eBooks.